



# KWAZULU-NATAL PROVINCE

TRANSPORT  
REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

**CONTRACT NO.: ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T**  
**SOURCING OF A TURNKEY CONTRACTOR (ENGINEER, PROCURE AND CONSTRUCT) FOR THE UPGRADE OF MAIN ROAD P258 FROM KM 13.367 TO KM 32.394, INCLUDING THE WIDENING OF MVUNYANE RIVER BRIDGE NO.3808 AT KM 18.781 AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF KWAMCHINSWANO CULVERT STC 4007 AT KM 17.363**  
**IN THE ZULULAND DISTRICT UNDER EMPANGENI REGION**

## THE EPC APPROACH

**Name of Tenderer or Consortium:**

.....

**This tender closes at 11h00 on Wednesday 07 February 2024 at the offices of the Department of Transport located at 172 Burger Street, Pietermaritzburg, 3201**

**LATE SUBMISSIONS WILL NOT BE CONSIDERED**

**Issued by:**

**The Department of Transport**  
172 Burger Street  
PIETERMARITZBURG  
3201

Contact Name: Ms A Soshebe  
Telephone: 033 355 0552

**Prepared by:**

**The Department of Transport**  
172 Burger Street  
PIETERMARITZBURG  
3201

Contact Name: Mr. N. Vezi  
Telephone: 033 355 0586



PROVINCE OF KWAZULU-NATAL  
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT

CONTRACT NO.: ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T  
SOURCING OF A TURNKEY CONTRACTOR (ENGINEER, PROCURE AND CONSTRUCT) FOR THE  
UPGRADE OF MAIN ROAD P258 FROM KM 13.367 TO KM 32.394, INCLUDING THE WIDENING OF  
MVUNYANE RIVER BRIDGE NO.3808 AT KM 18.781 AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF  
KWAMCHINSWANO CULVERT STC 4007 AT KM 17.363  
IN THE ZULULAND DISTRICT UNDER EMPANGENI REGION

Tender section of document: Pages T1 – T57  
Contract section of document: Pages C1 – C156

CONTENTS

Section number and heading	Page Colours
<b>The Tender</b>	
<b>Part T1: Tendering procedures</b>	
T1.1 Tender Notice and Invitation to Tender	White
T1,2 Tender Data	Pink
<b>Part T2: Returnable documents</b>	
T2.1 List of Returnable Documents	Yellow
T2.2 Returnable Schedules	Yellow
<b>The Contract</b>	
<b>Part C1: Agreements and Contract Data</b>	
C1.1 Form of Offer and Acceptance	Yellow
C1.2 Contract Data	Yellow
C1.3 Performance Guarantee	White
C1.4 Agreement in terms of Section 37(2) of the Occupational Health and Safety Act No. 85 of 1993	White
C1.5 Retention Money Guarantee	White
C1.6 Transfer of Rights	White
<b>Part C2: Pricing Data</b>	
C2.1 Pricing Assumptions	Yellow
C2.2 Bill of Quantities	Yellow
<b>Part C3: Scope of Work</b>	
C3.1 Standard Specifications	Blue
C3.2 Project Specifications	Blue
C3.3 Particular Specifications	Blue
<b>Part C4: Site Information</b>	
C4.1 Locality Plan	Green
C4.2 Example of Contract Signboard Details	Green
C4.3 Traffic Information (delete if not required)	Green
C4.4 Any other relevant technical reports (delete if not required)	Green

**DOCUMENT CHECKLIST**

This document checklist is provided to assist the Tenderer.

<b>ITEMS</b>	<b>CHECKED</b>
1 Returnable Schedules in Section T2.2	<input type="checkbox"/>
2 Correct Tender Offer carried forward to <b>C1.1 Form of Offer and Acceptance</b> and the Form of Offer duly completed and signed.....	<input type="checkbox"/>
3 Bill of Quantities:	
i) Completed in <b>legible INK</b> only.....	<input type="checkbox"/>
ii) Corrections crossed out and initialled .....	<input type="checkbox"/>
4 Contract specific data provided by the Contractor .....	<input type="checkbox"/>

## PART T1: TENDERING PROCEDURES

### TABLE OF CONTENTS

T1.1	TENDER NOTICE AND INVITATION TO TENDER .....	T5
T1.2	TENDER DATA .....	T7

**PLEASE NOTE:**

Any appeals regarding the award of this bid should be lodged within 5 working days from the date of the publication of bid results and may be downloaded from these websites, [e-tenderportal /www.kzntransport.gov.za](http://www.kzntransport.gov.za).

The publication is also published in the following platforms, [www.cidb.org.za](http://www.cidb.org.za).

The address provided for the lodging of appeals is:

The Chairperson  
Bid Appeals Tribunal  
Private Bag X9082  
Pietermaritzburg  
3200

FAX NO.: 033 897 4501

## T1.1 TENDER NOTICE AND INVITATION TO TENDER

**CONTRACT NO.: ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T**  
**SOURCING OF A TURNKEY CONTRACTOR (ENGINEER, PROCURE AND CONSTRUCT) FOR THE UPGRADE OF MAIN ROAD P258 FROM KM 13.367 TO KM 32.394, INCLUDING THE WIDENING OF MVUNYANE RIVER BRIDGE NO.3808 AT KM 18.781 AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF KWAMCHINSWANO CULVERT STC 4007 AT KM 17.363 IN THE ZULULAND DISTRICT UNDER EMPANGENI REGION**

The Province of KwaZulu-Natal, Department of Transport, invites tenders, experienced in Engineer, Procure and Construct (EPC) contract for this road infrastructure project. The duration of the project is 72 months inclusive of design and construction works. The successful bidder will be responsible for the design, procurement and construction of this project.

Tenders must have a minimum CIDB contractor grading designation of 9CE. Coupled to this, the professional engineering consultant is to demonstrate adequate experience of managing projects of a grade 9CE.

Only tenderers who comply with the functionality criteria for the experience of key persons, the company's past performance in Specialised and Complex Road projects, ie Upgrade and Bridges as stated in the Tender Data, are eligible to be considered for further evaluation.

The requirements of the CIDB B.U.I.L.D. Programme with respect to Indirect Targeting for Enterprise Development is set at a minimum contribution of 30% of the project's contract value towards subcontracting for both Constructions Works and Professional Engineering Works. The successful tenderer shall also be required to provide developmental support to Targeted Enterprises.

The requirements of the CIDB B.U.I.L.D. Programme with respect to the Standard for Skills Development is set at a development support of 0.25% of the project's contract value.

Tenderers shall be required to demonstrate that they will have in their employ during the contract period the necessary personnel satisfying the requirements of the Scope of Work for labour-enhanced competencies for management and supervisory personnel.

Preference points are offered to tenderers who comply with the requirements of PPPFA stipulated in clause C.3.11.1 of the Tender Data.

Tender documents will be available as from 10h00 on Thursday **14 December 2023**.

Free download of tender documents will be available on the [www.kzntransport.gov.za](http://www.kzntransport.gov.za) and [www.etenders.gov.za](http://www.etenders.gov.za) website and must be downloaded.

Queries relating to this tender may be addressed to:

Bidding procedure enquiries:	Technical enquiries:
Mr Sandile Nkala Telephone: 033 355 8975 E-mail: <a href="mailto:Sandile.Nkala@kzntransport.gov.za">Sandile.Nkala@kzntransport.gov.za</a>	Ms. Anela Soshebe Telephone: 033 355 0552 E-mail: <a href="mailto:Anela.Soshebe@Kzntransport.gov.za">Anela.Soshebe@Kzntransport.gov.za</a>

**Deadline for the submission of all technical enquiries is the 24 January 2024 at 16h00.**

A non-compulsory clarification meeting with representatives of the Employer will be held virtually via MICROSOFT TEAMS application on **17 January 2024** starting at **10h00 (logging time: 09h00 to 10h00)**. It is the responsibility of the bidder to ensure that they have network connectivity and power to log into the meeting on time and check developments on the Department's website [www.kzntransport.gov.za](http://www.kzntransport.gov.za) i.e. Addendums etc.

Meeting Invite Link: <https://bit.ly/ZNB02219>

Closing of BID to be 6 weeks from advert. **The closing time for receipt of tenders is 11h00 on 07 February 2024 at KZN Department of Transport, 172 Burger Street, Pietermaritzburg, 3201.**

Telegraphic, telephonic, telex, facsimile, electronic, e-mail and late tenders will not be accepted.

Requirements for sealing, addressing, delivery, opening and assessment of tenders are stated in the Tender Data.

## CLARIFICATION MEETING VENUE PLAN

“PLEASE NOTE THAT THERE WILL BE NO PHYSICAL CLARIFICATION MEETING. REFER TO CLAUSE C2.7 TENDER DATA AND SECTION T2.2A RETURNABLE SCHEDULES FOR DETAILS OF THE VIRTUAL MEETING. .”

**Time and date:** As per the advert

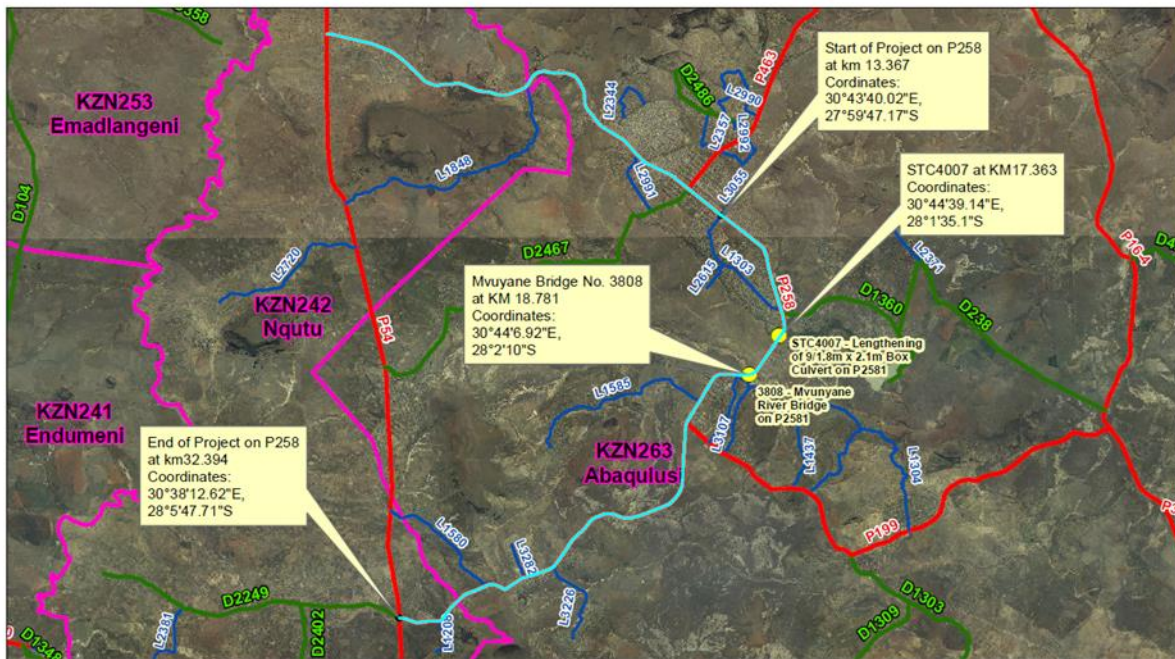
## LOCALITY DETAILS

Access to the Site can be obtained from the intersection of Main Road P47-1 and P463, drive toward south about 20.3 km and intersect with P258 at km 12.100 at eMondlo Township then turn left to start of project at km 13.367.

**Location:** Empangeni Region, Vryheid at eMondlo Township

**Road:** P258 (km 13+367 to km 32+394)

**Coordinates** : Start Co-ordinates: Lat – 27°59'47.17”S Lon – 30°43'40.02”E  
End Co-ordinates: Lat – 28°5'47.71”S Lon – 30°38'12.62”E



<b>Locality Map of P258 Abaqulusi Municipality</b>		<b>Legend</b> 	 Department of Transport PROVINCE OF KWAZULU-NATAL Road Information Services Tel: (033) 355 8815 Email: Oivuniso.Radebe@kztransport.gov.za	DATE
0 0.5 1 2 Kilometers	1:116 000			PROJECT NO. 23/2023 TITLE: Clarification Meeting Venue Plan

## 1.2 TENDER DATA

The conditions of tender are the standard conditions of tender contained in Annex C of the Construction Industry Development Board Standard for Uniformity in Engineering and Construction Works Contracts, published in Government Gazette No. 42622 dated 8 August 2019.

The standard conditions of tender make several references to the tender data for details that apply specifically to this tender. The tender data shall have precedence in the interpretation of any ambiguity or inconsistency between the tender data and the standard conditions of tender.

Each item of data given below is cross-referenced to the clause in the standard conditions of tender to which it mainly applies.

Clause Number	Data
C.1.2	<p>The <b>Tender Documents</b> consist of the following:</p> <p>(a) This <b>Project Document</b>, which contains the following:</p> <p><b>PART T1: TENDERING PROCEDURES</b></p> <p>T1.1 Tender Notice and Invitation to Tender T1.2 Tender Data</p> <p><b>PART T2: RETURNABLE DOCUMENTS</b></p> <p>T2.1 List of Returnable Documents T2.2 Returnable Schedules</p> <p><b>PART C1: AGREEMENTS AND CONTRACT DATA</b></p> <p>C1.1 Form of Offer and Acceptance C1.2 Contract Data C1.3 Performance Guarantee C1.4 Agreement in terms of Section 37(2) of the Occupational Health and Safety Act No. 85 of 1993 C1.5 Retention Money Guarantee C1.6 Transfer of Rights</p> <p><b>PART C2: PRICING DATA</b></p> <p>C2.1 Pricing Assumptions C2.2 Bill of Quantities</p> <p><b>PART C3: SCOPE OF WORKS</b></p> <p>C3.1 Standard Specifications C3.2 Project Specifications C3.3 Particular Specifications</p> <p><b>PART C4: SITE INFORMATION</b></p> <p>C4.1 Locality Plan C4.2 Example of Contract Signboard Details C4.3 Traffic Information C4.4 Any other relevant technical reports</p> <p>(b) <b>Drawings</b> (issued separately by the bidder).</p>

Clause Number	Data
	<p>(c) <b>‘FIDIC Silver Book – A companion to the 2017 EPC/Turnkey Contract – Published by ICE Publishing.</b> This document is obtainable separately and Tenderers shall obtain their own copy.</p> <p>(d) <b>‘COTO Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Works for State Road Authorities, 2020 edition’.</b> This document is obtainable separately and Tenderers shall obtain their own copy.</p> <p>(e) <b>‘Occupational Health and Safety Act No. 85 of 1993’, ‘Occupational Health and Safety Amendment Act No. 181 of 1993’, and the ‘Construction Regulations, 2014’</b> (Government Notice No. R. 489 published in Government Gazette No. 40883 of 2 June 2017,). These documents are obtainable separately and Tenderers shall obtain their own copies.</p> <p>(f) <b>‘Construction Industry Development Board Act No. 38 of 2000’</b> as amended and the <b>‘Regulations in terms of the Construction Industry Development Board Act No. 38 of 2000’</b> (Government Notice No. R. 692 published in Government Gazette No. 26427 of 9 June 2004, as amended).</p> <p>(g) <b>‘Technical Recommendations for Highways – 3, 4, 12, 14 and 16.</b></p> <p>(h) <b>‘Technical Methods for Highways – 9 1992: Pavement Management Systems: Standard Visual Assessment Manual for Flexible Pavements.</b></p> <p>(i) <b>‘South African Pavement Engineering Manual (SAPEM) – Chapter 10: Pavement Design.</b></p> <p>(j) <b>‘Department of Transport (KZN) DRAINAGE MANUAL</b></p> <p>(k) <b>‘SANRAL M2 Construction Quality Control manual.</b></p> <p>(l) <b>‘South African National Standard: Various Manuals.</b></p> <p>In addition, Tenderers are advised, in their own interest, to obtain their own copies of the relevant Acts, Regulations and Standards referred to in this document as they are essential for the Tenderer to become acquainted with the basics of construction management, the implementation of preferential construction procurement policies, and participation of targeted enterprises and labour.</p>
C.2.1	<p>Only those tenderers who satisfy the following criteria are eligible to submit tenders.</p> <p>(a) CIDB registration</p> <p>Only those tenderers who are registered with the CIDB, or are capable of being so prior to the evaluation of submissions, in a contractor grading designation equal to or higher than a contractor grading designation determined in accordance with the sum tendered, or a value determined in accordance with Regulation 25 (1B) or 25(7A) of the Construction Industry Development Regulations, for a Grade 9 CE class of construction work, are eligible to have their tenders evaluated.</p> <p>Only contractors whose CIDB status is “Active” at the time of tender evaluation will be considered for further evaluation. Contractors whose status is “Suspended” or “Expired” will not be considered for evaluation and will be disqualified from the bidding process.</p>



Clause Number	Data
	<p>Joint ventures are eligible to submit tenders provided that:</p> <p>(i) every member of the joint venture is registered with the CIDB;</p> <p>(ii) the lead partner has a contractor grading designation in the 8CE class of construction work; not lower than one level below the required grading designation in the class of construction work under consideration and possesses the required recognition status; and</p> <p>(iii) the combined contractor grading designation calculated in accordance with the Construction Industry Development Regulations is equal to or higher than 9 for a CE class of construction work or a value determined in accordance with Regulation 25 (1B) or 25(7A) of the Construction Industry Development Regulations.</p> <p>(b) Central Supplier Database (CSD)</p> <p>Tenderers, or in the event of a joint venture, each member of the joint venture, must be registered on the Central Supplier Database at the time of evaluation. Tenders received from such tenderers who do not comply with this requirement, will be considered non-responsive</p> <p>Prospective suppliers should self-register on the CSD website <a href="http://www.csd.gov.za">www.csd.gov.za</a>.</p>
C.2.7	<p>This will be non-compulsory virtual briefing meeting. It is recommended that the contractors perform a physical site visit prior to the closure of the bid.</p> <p>The arrangements and venue for the non-compulsory Clarification Meeting are:</p> <p>Venue: The briefing session will be held virtually via the MICROSOFT TEAMS application.</p> <p>Date: <b>Wednesday 17 January 2024 at 10H00 for (Log in time: 09H00 to 10H00)</b></p> <p>Contact person: Ms A.Soshebe</p> <p>Telephone: 033 355 0552</p> <p>Fax: 086 581 0309</p> <p>E-mail: Anela.Soshebe@kzntransport.gov.za</p>
C.2.10	<p>All Tenderers must be registered for Value Added Tax (VAT) with the South African Revenue Service (SARS).</p>
C.2.11	<p>The tenderer shall not retype the tender document.</p> <p><b><u>Any tender submitted using a document that has been retyped shall be considered non-responsive and rejected in terms of clause C.3.8 of the Conditions of Tender.</u></b></p>
C.2.12	<p>The requirements are as described in clause A2.1.4.2'ALTERNATIVE DESIGNS' of the 'COTO Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Works for South African Road Authorities (Draft Standard) (October 2020 edition)'.</p>

Clause Number	Data
C.2.13	<p>C.2.13.3 Tender offers shall be submitted as an original only. Under no circumstances whatsoever may the tender forms be retyped or redrafted. Photocopies of the original tender documentation may be used, but an original signature must appear on such photocopies.</p> <p>C.2.13.5 The Employer's address for delivery of tender offers and identification details to be shown on each tender offer package are:  <b>Location of Tender Box:</b> Outside the Foyer, KZN Department of Transport  <b>Physical Address:</b> 172 Burger Street, Pietermaritzburg  <b>Identification Details:</b> Contract No. ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T</p> <p>C.2.13.6 A two-envelope system <u>will NOT be followed</u>.</p>
C.2.15	<p>Closing of the BID to be 6 weeks from advert. The closing time for submission of Tender Offers is:  <b>11h00 on 07 February 2024.</b></p> <p>Telegraphic, telephonic, telex, facsimile, electronic, e-mail and late tenders will not be accepted.</p>
C.2.16	<p>The tender offer validity period is twelve (12) weeks, calculated from the date of bid closure.</p>
C.2.18	<p>The tenderer must submit to the Employer the names of all management and supervisory staff that will be employed to supervise the labour-enhanced portion of the works together with satisfactory evidence that such staff members satisfy the eligibility requirement (refer to Returnable Schedule H).</p>
C.2.19	<p>Access shall be provided for inspections by personnel acting on behalf of the Employer.</p>
C.2.23	<p>The certificates as required in the Returnable Schedules and Forms must be provided with the tender for each party to a consortium / joint venture.</p>
C.3.4	<p>The time and location for opening of the tender submissions are:  Time: <b>11h00</b> Date: <b>07 February 2024</b>  Location / Venue: Acquisition Section, 'B' Block Boardroom, 172 Burger Street, Pietermaritzburg, 3201</p>
C.3.5	<p>A two-envelope system will NOT be followed.</p>
C3.8	<p><b>Test for responsiveness</b></p> <p>C.3.8.1 Determine, after opening and before detailed evaluation, whether each tender offer properly received:  a) complies with the requirements of these Conditions of Tender,  b) has been properly and fully completed and signed, and  c) is responsive to the other requirements of the tender documents.</p> <p>C.3.8.2 A responsive tender is one that conforms to all the terms, conditions, and specifications of the tender documents without material deviation or qualification. A material deviation or qualification is one which, in the Employer's opinion, would:  a) detrimentally affect the scope, quality, or performance of the works, services or supply identified in the Scope of Work,</p>

Clause Number	Data												
	<p>b) significantly change the Employer's or the tenderer's risks and responsibilities under the contract, or</p> <p>c) affect the competitive position of other tenderers presenting responsive tenders, if it were to be rectified.</p> <p>Reject a non-responsive tender offer, and not allow it to be subsequently made responsive by correction or withdrawal of the non-conforming deviation or reservation.</p>												
<p>C3.9</p> <p>C.3.9.1</p> <p>C.3.9.2</p> <p>C.3.9.3</p> <p>C.3.9.4</p>	<p><b>Arithmetical errors, omissions, and discrepancies</b></p> <p>Check responsive tenders for discrepancies between amounts in words and amounts in figures. Where there is a discrepancy between the amounts in figures and the amount in words, the amount in words shall govern.</p> <p>Check the highest ranked tender or tenderer with the highest number of tender evaluation points after the evaluation of tender offers in accordance with C.3.11 for:</p> <p>a) the gross misplacement of the decimal point in any unit rate;</p> <p>b) omissions made in completing the pricing schedule or bills of quantities; or</p> <p>c) arithmetic errors in:</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(i) line item totals resulting from the product of a unit rate and a quantity in bills of quantities or schedules of prices; or</p> <p style="padding-left: 40px;">(ii) the summation of the prices.</p> <p>Notify the tenderer of all errors or omissions that are identified in the tender offer and either confirm the tender offer as tendered or accept the corrected total of prices.</p> <p>Where the tenderer elects to confirm the tender offer as tendered, correct the errors as follows:</p> <p>a) If bills of quantities or pricing schedules apply and there is an error in the line item total resulting from the product of the unit rate and the quantity, the line item total shall govern and the rate shall be corrected. Where there is an obviously gross misplacement of the decimal point in the unit rate, the line item total as quoted shall govern, and the unit rate shall be corrected.</p> <p>b) Where there is an error in the total of the prices either as a result of other corrections required by this checking process or in the tenderer's addition of prices, the total of the prices shall govern and the tenderer will be asked to revise selected item prices (and their rates if bills of quantities apply) to achieve the tendered total of the prices.</p>												
<p>C3.11.1</p>	<p><b>Evaluation criteria</b></p> <p>The evaluation of tender offers will be based on administrative compliance, functionality, price and preference in accordance with the Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2022, the KwaZulu-Natal Department of Transport (KZNDOT) Interim Preferential Procurement Policy – January 2023, as amended and the CIDB Inform Practice Note #5, Version 3 - September 2020, or as amended.</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="2"><b>EVALUATION PROCESS</b></th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2"><b>STAGE 1</b></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Administrative requirements</td> <td>1A) Mandatory administrative requirements</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>1B) Non-Mandatory administrative requirements</td> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2"><b>STAGE 2</b></th> </tr> <tr> <td>Technical/Functional criteria</td> <td>Testing of capacity – meet minimum threshold of 60%</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	<b>EVALUATION PROCESS</b>		<b>STAGE 1</b>		Administrative requirements	1A) Mandatory administrative requirements		1B) Non-Mandatory administrative requirements	<b>STAGE 2</b>		Technical/Functional criteria	Testing of capacity – meet minimum threshold of 60%
<b>EVALUATION PROCESS</b>													
<b>STAGE 1</b>													
Administrative requirements	1A) Mandatory administrative requirements												
	1B) Non-Mandatory administrative requirements												
<b>STAGE 2</b>													
Technical/Functional criteria	Testing of capacity – meet minimum threshold of 60%												

<b>STAGE 3</b>	
Price	90%
Specific goals	10%
TOTAL	100%

**Stage 1 Administrative requirements**

**Stage 1A: Mandatory Administrative requirements**

Failure to comply with the above will lead to automatic disqualification

1. ALL standard bidding document (SBD..) shall be filled in full, signed and witnessed
2. Required certificates and proof of academic qualifications and all returnable schedules as per T2.2.
3. Form of offer and acceptance needs to be submitted filled in full and signed
4. Authority to sign page needs to be submitted and person(s) given authorities shall be the same as the signature that appears in the document.

**Stage 1B Non-Mandatory Administrative requirements**

These are requirements that will not disqualify the bid but will need to be complied with e.g. Tax clearance cert CSD/CIDB

A service provider needs to acknowledge and accept an undertaking.

The number of jobs to be created using such local labour shall include for a minimum percentage allocation to the following individual targeted groups:

- 60% Women;
- 55% Youth; and
- 2% Disabled.)

In line with the specifications

**Stage 2: Functionality**

The second stage of the evaluation of tender offers will be based on functionality (technical proposal) in accordance with the Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2022 and KZNDOT Interim Preferential Procurement Policy-January 2023, as amended.

**Stage 3 Price and Preference**

Tenders will be evaluated on price and preference in accordance with the Preferential Procurement Regulations, 2022 and KZNDOT Interim Preferential Procurement Policy-January 2023.

Specific goals points must be claimed using Returnable Schedule D - SDB 6.1 in accordance with the tenderer's Company and Intellectual Property Commission (CIPC) company registration documents, Central Supplier Database report, B-BBEE status level of contributor or Sworn affidavit as per construction sector code and proof of participation on job creation that is provided as returnable schedule K. The Acceptable Proof for the Allocation of Specific Goals Points, as detailed in Section Q - Acceptable Proof & Right to Award, must be attached to Returnable Schedule D - SDB6.1. For proof of disability, an official letter from a Doctor certified by the Department of Health Occupational Doctor confirming the disability is required to be attached.

The tenderer's B-BBEE Status Level Verification Certificate must comply with the requirements of Returnable Schedule E and be submitted as an attachment to the returnable schedule.

Clause Number	Data								
	<p>The Employer may perform a risk analysis on the preferred tenderer as per the provisions of Section 3.6 of the CIDB Inform Practice Note #5 Version 3 - September 2020 or as amended.</p> <p>Stages of prices (BEC to check the ECSA guideline) (Attach the ECSA % of life cycle of project)</p> <p>The bidder shall provide a full Bill of Quantities (Activity Schedule) containing all the project elements including engineering fees (ECSA) and disbursements as per Schedule A, Schedule B, Schedule C, Schedule F and Schedule G. Reference is made to PART C2: PRICING DATA of the Contract Section.</p> <p><b><u>Total Score for Price and Preference</u></b> The points scored for a Tenderer in respect of Price will be added to the points scored in respect of Preference. Only the tender with the highest number of points may be selected, except in those instances permissible by legislation, practice notes or relevant policies.</p> <p>The scope of work for this contract is classified in the following table.</p> <table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="text-align: left;"><b><i>CIDB Standards for Uniformity</i></b></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><b>YES / NO</b></th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td><b>Simple/straightforward/routine work</b> - where the tasks or activities are of a straightforward nature in terms of which inputs are relatively well known and outputs can be readily defined.</td> <td style="text-align: center;">NO</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Complex work</b> - characterised by requirements for higher levels of skills, greater resources or not well-defined inputs and outputs. <b><i>(if this evaluation criteria is selected please include functionality)</i></b></td> <td style="text-align: center;">YES</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Specialist work</b> - requiring considerable innovation, creativity, and expertise or skill (or both) or work that has a high downstream impact. <b><i>(if this evaluation criteria is selected please include functionality)</i></b></td> <td style="text-align: center;">YES</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>The functionality criteria and weighting for each of the sub-criteria on which the Technical Proposal submitted with Returnable Schedule O will be evaluated, as indicated in the following table.</p>	<b><i>CIDB Standards for Uniformity</i></b>	<b>YES / NO</b>	<b>Simple/straightforward/routine work</b> - where the tasks or activities are of a straightforward nature in terms of which inputs are relatively well known and outputs can be readily defined.	NO	<b>Complex work</b> - characterised by requirements for higher levels of skills, greater resources or not well-defined inputs and outputs. <b><i>(if this evaluation criteria is selected please include functionality)</i></b>	YES	<b>Specialist work</b> - requiring considerable innovation, creativity, and expertise or skill (or both) or work that has a high downstream impact. <b><i>(if this evaluation criteria is selected please include functionality)</i></b>	YES
<b><i>CIDB Standards for Uniformity</i></b>	<b>YES / NO</b>								
<b>Simple/straightforward/routine work</b> - where the tasks or activities are of a straightforward nature in terms of which inputs are relatively well known and outputs can be readily defined.	NO								
<b>Complex work</b> - characterised by requirements for higher levels of skills, greater resources or not well-defined inputs and outputs. <b><i>(if this evaluation criteria is selected please include functionality)</i></b>	YES								
<b>Specialist work</b> - requiring considerable innovation, creativity, and expertise or skill (or both) or work that has a high downstream impact. <b><i>(if this evaluation criteria is selected please include functionality)</i></b>	YES								

<b><u>This table is applicable to Complex and Specialist Work.</u></b>													
<b>Functionality Criteria</b>	<b>Weighting and points</b>												
<p><b>Project Lead:</b></p> <p>Refers to the leader of the EPC team and is responsible for:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• being the point of contact</li> <li>• being the central point of EPC coordination</li> <li>• interfacing with the client during all phases of the contract</li> </ul>	<p><b>Lead Project Engineer/Manager (weight = 20):</b></p> <p>Must be registered with either ECSA (Pr Eng) or SACPCMP (Pr CPM)</p> <p>Years of Road Upgrade experience - calculated post qualification</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr><td>14 years and above</td><td>= 5</td></tr> <tr><td>12-13 years</td><td>= 4</td></tr> <tr><td>10-11 years</td><td>= 3</td></tr> <tr><td>8-9 years</td><td>= 2</td></tr> <tr><td>6-7 years</td><td>= 1</td></tr> <tr><td>0-5 years</td><td>= 0</td></tr> </table> <p><b>Score = 20(point/5)</b></p>	14 years and above	= 5	12-13 years	= 4	10-11 years	= 3	8-9 years	= 2	6-7 years	= 1	0-5 years	= 0
14 years and above	= 5												
12-13 years	= 4												
10-11 years	= 3												
8-9 years	= 2												
6-7 years	= 1												
0-5 years	= 0												
<p><b>Key Personnel Construction:</b></p> <p>Qualifications</p> <p>Projects Implementation Experience</p> <p>Construction Experience</p>	<p><b>Contracts Manager (weight = 5):</b></p> <p>Must be professionally registered with ECSA and / or SACPCMP (Pr Eng / Pr Tech Eng / Pr Techni / Pr CPM or Pr CM only)</p> <p>Years of Road Upgrade experience - calculated post qualification:</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr><td>10 years and above</td><td>= 5</td></tr> <tr><td>9 years</td><td>= 4</td></tr> <tr><td>8 years</td><td>= 3</td></tr> <tr><td>7 years</td><td>= 2</td></tr> <tr><td>6 years</td><td>= 1</td></tr> <tr><td>0-5 years</td><td>= 0</td></tr> </table>	10 years and above	= 5	9 years	= 4	8 years	= 3	7 years	= 2	6 years	= 1	0-5 years	= 0
	10 years and above	= 5											
	9 years	= 4											
8 years	= 3												
7 years	= 2												
6 years	= 1												
0-5 years	= 0												
<p><b>Construction Manager (senior site agent) (weight = 5):</b></p> <p>LIC NQF 5 "Manage Labour-Intensive Construction Processes" or equivalent Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (QCTO) qualifications at NQF level 5 or 7.</p> <p>Years of Road Upgrade experience:</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr><td>13 years and above</td><td>= 5</td></tr> <tr><td>11-12 years</td><td>= 4</td></tr> <tr><td>9-10 years</td><td>= 3</td></tr> <tr><td>7-8 years</td><td>= 2</td></tr> <tr><td>5-6 years</td><td>= 1</td></tr> <tr><td>0-4 years</td><td>= 0</td></tr> </table>	13 years and above	= 5	11-12 years	= 4	9-10 years	= 3	7-8 years	= 2	5-6 years	= 1	0-4 years	= 0	
13 years and above	= 5												
11-12 years	= 4												
9-10 years	= 3												
7-8 years	= 2												
5-6 years	= 1												
0-4 years	= 0												
<p><b>Foreman / Supervisor (weight = 5):</b></p> <p>LIC NQF level 4 "National Certificate: Supervision of Civil Engineering Construction Processes";</p> <p>Years of Road Upgrade experience</p> <table style="width: 100%; border: none;"> <tr><td>5 years and above</td><td>= 5</td></tr> <tr><td>4 years</td><td>= 4</td></tr> <tr><td>3 years</td><td>= 3</td></tr> <tr><td>2 years</td><td>= 2</td></tr> <tr><td>1 years</td><td>= 1</td></tr> <tr><td>0 years</td><td>= 0</td></tr> </table> <p><b>Score = 5(point/5) + 5(point/5) + 5(point/5)</b></p>	5 years and above	= 5	4 years	= 4	3 years	= 3	2 years	= 2	1 years	= 1	0 years	= 0	
5 years and above	= 5												
4 years	= 4												
3 years	= 3												
2 years	= 2												
1 years	= 1												
0 years	= 0												

Clause Number	Data													
	<p><b>Key Personnel Engineering:</b></p> <p>Qualifications</p> <p>Projects Implementation Experience</p> <p>Design Experience relevant to the scope of works (Geometric design experience for road upgrade projects, Pavement design experience for rehabilitation projects, bridge design experience for major structures)</p>	<p><b>Design Civil Engineer/Technologist (weight = 15):</b></p> <p>Must be registered with ECSA (Pr Eng / Pr Tech Eng)</p> <p>Years of Road Upgrade design experience- calculated post qualification:</p> <table border="0"> <tr><td>14 years and above</td><td>= 5</td></tr> <tr><td>12-13 years</td><td>= 4</td></tr> <tr><td>10-11 years</td><td>= 3</td></tr> <tr><td>8-9 years</td><td>= 2</td></tr> <tr><td>6-7 years</td><td>= 1</td></tr> <tr><td>0-5 years</td><td>= 0</td></tr> </table> <p>Score = 15(point/5)</p>	14 years and above	= 5	12-13 years	= 4	10-11 years	= 3	8-9 years	= 2	6-7 years	= 1	0-5 years	= 0
14 years and above	= 5													
12-13 years	= 4													
10-11 years	= 3													
8-9 years	= 2													
6-7 years	= 1													
0-5 years	= 0													
	<p><b>Key Personnel Social Facilitation:</b></p> <p>Qualifications</p> <p>Social Facilitation Experience</p>	<p><b>Social Facilitator (weight = 5)</b></p> <p>Bachelor's Degree in Social Sciences, Development Studies or Human Resources, Registration with South African Council for the Social Service Professions (SACSSP)</p> <p>Years of post-professional registration experience in Development Facilitation / Social Facilitation on public / private sector infrastructure projects / programs</p> <table border="0"> <tr><td>5 years and above</td><td>= 5</td></tr> <tr><td>4 years</td><td>= 4</td></tr> <tr><td>3 years</td><td>= 3</td></tr> <tr><td>2 years</td><td>= 2</td></tr> <tr><td>1 years</td><td>= 1</td></tr> <tr><td>0 years</td><td>= 0</td></tr> </table> <p>Score = 5(point/5)</p>	5 years and above	= 5	4 years	= 4	3 years	= 3	2 years	= 2	1 years	= 1	0 years	= 0
5 years and above	= 5													
4 years	= 4													
3 years	= 3													
2 years	= 2													
1 years	= 1													
0 years	= 0													
	<p><b>Tenderers Road Upgrade Experience:</b></p> <p><b>(Road Upgrade) Previous Projects</b></p> <p><i>The evaluation will consider the nature of the reference projects, scope of services provided, and Employer completion certificate</i></p> <p><i>Final Approval Certificates/ Completion Certificates only signed by the Engineer, or the Engineering consultant firm will not be considered.</i></p> <p>(Reference Letters and Final Approval Certificates/ Completion Certificates to be provided with contact details of references.</p> <p><b>(Reference Letters and Final Approval Certificates/ Completion Certificates for projects completed older than 15 years and/or not signed by the</b></p>	<p>List number of completed Road Upgrades projects</p> <p><b>a) ENGINEERING EXPERIENCE (weight = 22.5):</b></p> <p>Reference Letters for 5 projects and above = 5  Reference Letters for 4 projects = 4  Reference Letters for 3 projects = 3  Reference Letters for 2 projects = 2  Reference Letters for 1 project = 1  Reference Letters for 0 projects = 0</p> <p><b>b) CONSTRUCTION EXPERIENCE (weight = 22.5):</b></p> <p>Final Approval Certificates/ Completion Certificates for 5 projects and above = 5</p> <p>Final Approval Certificates/ Completion Certificates for 4 projects = 4</p> <p>Final Approval Certificates/ Completion Certificates for 3 projects = 3</p> <p>Final Approval Certificates/ Completion Certificates for 2 projects = 2</p> <p>Final Approval Certificates/ Completion Certificates for 1 project = 1</p> <p>Final Approval Certificates/ Completion Certificates for 0 projects = 0</p>												

Clause Number	Data	
	<p><b>Employer will not be considered as proof of experience)</b></p> <p><i>(NOTE: a bidder may tender as a Joint Venture/Consortium or Single Entity. Only a total of <b>10 points</b> may be obtained in this section as illustrated within the table on the right)</i></p>	<p>Score = 22.5(point/5) + 22.5(point/5)</p>
	<p><b>TOTAL</b></p>	<p>Maximum score = 100</p> <p>Individual score = weight (points/5)</p> <p>Maximum score = sum of all individual scores</p> <p><b>NB: Tenderers scoring 60% and above of the functionality score will qualify for further evaluation AND it is mandatory that at least 10% of this score must be from the Tenderers Experience.</b></p>
<p>Note: All personnel to be in employ of the bidding enterprise or letter of intent for personnel outside the employ of the bidding enterprise to be included with CV. The Department will disregard all experience of duplicated personnel. The Department reserve the right to assess the functionality ongoing to ensure compliance. The Department must be apprised immediately if there is any change to the personnel identified in the tender document. Failure to comply with this requirement shall lead to contract termination. Any replacement must have equal or higher experience. <b>Where the bidding enterprise is tendering with multiple partners, the Joint Venture Agreement shall be submitted, failure to submit the Joint Venture Agreement will invalidate the bid.</b></p>		



Clause Number	Data
C.3.13	<p>(e) The legal requirements for acceptance of the tender offer are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) <b>Tender Defaulters Register</b> - the Tenderer or any of its principals is <u>not</u> listed on the register of Tender Defaulters in terms of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act of 2004 as a person prohibited from doing business with the public sector.</li> <li>(ii) <b>Abuse of the SCM System</b> - the Tenderer has <u>not</u> abused the Employer's Supply Chain Management System and has <u>not</u> been given a written notice to the effect that he has failed to perform on any previous contract.</li> <li>(iii) <b>Declaration</b> - the Tenderer has indicated and declared whether a spouse, child or parent of the Tenderer is in the service of the State.</li> <li>(iv) <b>Fraud and Corruption</b> - the Employer is satisfied that the Tenderer or any of his principals have <u>not influenced</u> the tender offer and acceptance by the following criteria: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• having offered, promised or given a bribe or other gift or remuneration to any person in connection with the obtaining of this Contract;</li> <li>• having acted in a fraudulent or corrupt manner in obtaining this Contract;</li> <li>• having approached an officer or employee of the Employer or the Employer's Agent with the object of influencing the award of a Contract in the Tenderer's favour;</li> <li>• having entered into any agreement or arrangement, whether legally binding or not, with any other person, firm or company to refrain from Tendering for this Contract or as to the amount of the Tender to be submitted by either party; or</li> <li>• having disclosed to any other person, firm or company other than the Employer, the exact or approximate amount of his proposed Tender.</li> </ul> </li> </ul> <p>The Employer may, in addition to using any other legal remedies, repudiate the Tender offer and acceptance and declare the Contract invalid should it have been concluded already.</p>
C.3.17	The number of paper copies of the signed contract to be provided by the Employer is <b>one (1)</b> .

## PART T2: RETURNABLE DOCUMENTS

### T2.1 LIST OF RETURNABLE DOCUMENTS

The following schedules and forms are contained in this document and are to be properly completed as required:

- (a) Returnable Schedules in T2.2.
- (b) C1.1 Form of Offer and Acceptance, C1.1.1: Offer, on page C3.
- (c) Contract Specific Data Provided by the Bidder in C1.2.3.
- (d) Pricing Data in C2.2: Bill of Quantities.

This tender applies to both the (a) Skills Development Standard and the (b) Indirect Targeting Standard. Although in the case of these two standards there are no returnable documents, tenderers are sensitised that the proforma documents as listed below, shall be completed by the successful contractor after award of the contract within the stipulated period. (The proforma documents are provided in the tender data for information purposes only).

- Form A 1 List of Recognised Skills Development Agencies
- Form A 2 Baseline Training Plan
- Form A 3 Project Interim Report
- Form A 4 Supervisor Agreement
- Form A 5 Project Completion Report.
- Project Interim Report
- Project Completion Report and Declaration.

**NOTE: The Tenderer is required to complete each schedule and form listed above to the best of his ability as the evaluation of tenders and the eventual contract will be based on the information provided by the Tenderer. Failure of a Tenderer to complete the schedules and forms to the satisfaction of the Employer will lead to rejection on the grounds that the tender is non-responsive.**

## T2.2 RETURNABLE SCHEDULES

A	NON-COMPULSORY VIRTUAL BRIEFING SESSION/ CERTIFICATE OF ATTENDANCE AT CLARIFICATION MEETING .....	T20
B	RECORD OF ADDENDA TO TENDER DOCUMENTS .....	T21
C	COMPULSORY ENTERPRISE QUESTIONNAIRE .....	T22
D	STANDARD BIDDING DOCUMENTS .....	T23
	SBD 1: INVITATION TO BID .....	T23
	SBD 4: DECLARATION OF INTEREST .....	T25
	SBD 5: THE NATIONAL INDUSTRIAL PARTICIPATION PROGRAMME .....	T28
	SBD 6.1: PREFERENCE POINTS CLAIM FORM IN TERMS OF THE PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT REGULATIONS 2022 .....	T30
E	B-BBEE STATUS LEVEL VERIFICATION CERTIFICATE .....	T38
F	CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORITY FOR SIGNATORY .....	T39
G	DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION EXPERIENCE .....	T41
H	KEY PERSONNEL .....	T42
I	CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT .....	T45
J	PROPOSED SUB-CONTRACTORS/SUB-CONSULTANTS .....	T46
K	PARTICIPATION IN JOB CREATION USING LOCAL LABOUR .....	T47
L	BIDDERS HEALTH AND SAFETY DECLARATION .....	T49
M	DEVIATIONS AND QUALIFICATIONS .....	T51
N	SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATIVE TENDERS .....	T52
O	TECHNICAL PROPOSAL .....	T53
P	NOTICES TO TENDERERS REGARDING THE COMPLETION OF FORMS .....	T55
Q	ACCEPTABLE PROOF & RIGHT TO AWARD .....	T56

**NOTE: The Tenderer is required to complete each schedule and form listed above to the best of his ability as the evaluation of tenders and the eventual contract will be based on the information provided by the Tenderer. Failure of a Tenderer to complete the schedules and forms to the satisfaction of the Employer will lead to rejection on the grounds that the tender is non-responsive.**

## A. NON-COMPLUSORY VIRTUAL BRIEFING SESSION

Institution involved: **KwaZulu-Natal Department of Transport**

BID No.: **ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T**

**Service: THE UPGRADE OF MAIN ROAD P258 FROM KM 13.367 TO KM 32.394, INCLUDING THE WIDENING OF MVUNYANE RIVER BRIDGE NO.3808 AT KM 18.781 AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF KWAMCHINSWANO CULVERT STC 4007 AT KM 17.363 IN THE ZULULAND DISTRICT UNDER EMPANGENI REGION**

\*\*\*\*\*

**The non-compulsory virtual briefing session with the representatives of the Employer will be held as per the instructions below:**

The briefing session will be held virtually via the MICROSOFT TEAMS application.

It is the responsibility of the bidder to ensure that they have network connectivity and power to log into the meeting on time and check developments on the Department's website [www.kzntransport.gov.za](http://www.kzntransport.gov.za) i.e. Addendums etc.

**Date: 17 January 2024**

**Briefing time: Grade 9CE: 10h00 (Log in time: 09h00 to 10h00)**

**meeting log in link: <https://bit.ly/ZNB02219>**

### **Procedure for accessing meeting:**

- Click on link or copy and paste onto internet browser (Preferably Google Chrome or internet explorer)
- Enter your name and company details
- Enter meeting

**NB. The minutes together with briefing notes will be published on the Departmental website.**

**Acceptable proof of attendance to the briefing session must be submitted with the tender document containing the following: (NB. Applicable only if the briefing session is compulsory.)**

- Completion of the attendance register.

**B. RECORD OF ADDENDA TO TENDER DOCUMENTS**

The undersigned confirm that the following communications received from the Employer or his representative before the date of submission of this tender offer, amending the tender documents, have been considered in this tender offer. ***(Addenda can only be issued following approval from the Employer. The Employer’s representative is not allowed to issue addenda to bidders without prior approval in terms of the SCM Delegations).***

ADDENDUM NO.	DATE	TITLE OR DETAILS

Signed		Date	
Name		Position	
Bidder			

**Failure to complete, sign and date this form or failure to acknowledge receipt of each Addendum issued shall result in the tender being considered non-responsive and rejected in terms of clause C.3.8 of the Conditions of Tender.**

**C. COMPULSORY ENTERPRISE QUESTIONNAIRE**

The following particulars must be furnished. In the case of a joint venture, separate enterprise questionnaires in respect of each partner must be completed and submitted.			
<b>Section 1: Name of enterprise:</b>			
<b>Section 2: VAT registration number, if any:</b>			
<b>Section 3: CIDB registration number, if any:</b>			
<b>Section 4: CSD number:</b>			
<b>Section 5: Particulars of sole proprietors and partners in partnerships:</b>			
<b>Name*</b>	<b>Identity number*</b>	<b>Personal income tax number*</b>	
* Complete only if sole proprietor or partnership and attach separate page if more than 3 partners			
<b>Section 6: Particulars of companies and close corporations</b>			
Company registration number:			
Close corporation number:			
Tax reference number:			
<b>Section 7: SBD4 issued by National Treasury must be completed for each tender and be attached as a tender requirement.</b>			
<b>Section 8: SBD 6 issued by National Treasury must be completed for each tender and be attached as a tender requirement.</b>			
The undersigned, who warrants that he / she is duly authorised to do so on behalf of the enterprise:			
i) authorizes the employer to verify the tenderers tax clearance status from the South African Revenue Services that it is in order.			
ii) confirms that the neither the name of the enterprise or the name of any partner, manager, director or other person, who wholly or partly exercises or may exercise, control over the enterprise appears on the Register of Tender Defaulters established in terms of the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act of 2004;			
iii) confirms that no partner, member, director or other person, who wholly or partly exercises, or may exercise, control over the enterprise appears, has within the last five years been convicted of fraud or corruption.			
iv) confirms that I / we are not associated, linked or involved with any other tendering entities submitting tender offers and have no other relationship with any of the tenderers or those responsible for compiling the scope of work that could cause or be interpreted as a conflict of interest; and			
iv) confirms that the contents of this questionnaire are within my personal knowledge and are to the best of my belief both true and correct.			
Signed		Date	
Name		Position	
<i>Enterprise name</i>			

**Failure to complete, sign and date this form shall result in the tender being considered non-responsive and rejected in terms of clause C.3.8 of the Conditions of Tender.**

**D. STANDARD BIDDING DOCUMENTS**

**SECTION A  
INVITATION TO BID**

**SBD1**

<b>YOU ARE HEREBY INVITED TO TENDER FOR REQUIREMENTS OF THE KWAZULU-NATAL DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT</b>					
<b>BID NUMBER:</b>	ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T	<b>CLOSING DATE</b>	07 February 2024	<b>CLOSING TIME:</b>	11h00
<b>DESCRIPTION</b>	THE UPGRADE OF MAIN ROAD P258 FROM KM 13.367 TO KM 32.394, INCLUDING THE WIDENING OF MVUNYANE RIVER BRIDGE NO.3808 AT KM 18.781 AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF KWAMCHINSWANO CULVERT STC 4007 AT KM 17.363 IN THE ZULULAND DISTRICT UNDER EMPANGENI REGION				
<b>TENDER RESPONSE DOCUMENTS MAY BE DEPOSITED IN THE BID BOX SITUATED AT (STREET ADDRESS)</b>					
Main Entrance Foyer 172 Burger Street Pietermaritzburg 3201			<b>Monday to Friday: 08:00 until 16:00</b> Under no circumstances must suppliers submit their Tender offers/ responses to the official whose name appears on the enquiries.		
<b>BIDDING PROCEDURE ENQUIRIES MAY BE DIRECTED TO</b>			<b>TECHNICAL ENQUIRIES MAY BE DIRECTED TO:</b>		
CONTACT PERSON	Sandile Nkala		CONTACT PERSON	Anela Soshebe	
TELEPHONE NUMBER	033 355 8975		TELEPHONE NUMBER	033 355 0552	
FACSIMILE NUMBER	033 355 8091		FACSIMILE NUMBER	033 342 6595	
E-MAIL ADDRESS	<a href="mailto:Patrick.Moore@Kzntransport.gov.za">Patrick.Moore@Kzntransport.gov.za</a>		E-MAIL ADDRESS	<a href="mailto:Anela.Soshebe@Kzntransport.gov.za">Anela.Soshebe@Kzntransport.gov.za</a>	
<b>SUPPLIER INFORMATION</b>					
NAME OF BIDDER					
POSTAL ADDRESS					
STREET ADDRESS					
TELEPHONE NUMBER	CODE		NUMBER		
CELLPHONE NUMBER					
FACSIMILE NUMBER	CODE		NUMBER		
E-MAIL ADDRESS					
VAT REGISTRATION NUMBER					
SUPPLIER COMPLIANCE STATUS	TAX COMPLIANCE SYSTEM PIN:		OR	CENTRAL SUPPLIER DATABASE NO:	MAAA
B-BBEE STATUS LEVEL VERIFICATION CERTIFICATE	TICK APPLICABLE BOX] <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No		B-BBEE STATUS LEVEL SWORN AFFIDAVIT	[TICK APPLICABLE BOX] <input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No	
<b>[A B-BBEE STATUS LEVEL VERIFICATION CERTIFICATE/ SWORN AFFIDAVIT (FOR EME &amp; QSE) MUST BE SUBMITTED IN ORDER TO QUALIFY FOR PREFERENCE POINTS FOR SPECIFIC GOALS]</b>					
ARE YOU THE ACCREDITED REPRESENTATIVE IN SOUTH AFRICA FOR THE GOODS /SERVICES /WORKS OFFERED?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No [IF YES ENCLOSE PROOF]		ARE YOU A FOREIGN BASED SUPPLIER FOR THE GOODS /SERVICES /WORKS OFFERED?	<input type="checkbox"/> Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No [IF YES, ANSWER THE QUESTIONNAIRE BELOW]	
<b>QUESTIONNAIRE TO BIDDING FOREIGN SUPPLIERS</b>					
IS THE ENTITY A RESIDENT OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA (RSA)?			<input type="checkbox"/> YES	<input type="checkbox"/> NO	
DOES THE ENTITY HAVE A BRANCH IN THE RSA?			<input type="checkbox"/> YES	<input type="checkbox"/> NO	
DOES THE ENTITY HAVE A PERMANENT ESTABLISHMENT IN THE RSA?			<input type="checkbox"/> YES	<input type="checkbox"/> NO	
DOES THE ENTITY HAVE ANY SOURCE OF INCOME IN THE RSA?			<input type="checkbox"/> YES	<input type="checkbox"/> NO	
IS THE ENTITY LIABLE IN THE RSA FOR ANY FORM OF TAXATION?			<input type="checkbox"/> YES	<input type="checkbox"/> NO	
<b>IF THE ANSWER IS "NO" TO ALL OF THE ABOVE, THEN IT IS NOT A REQUIREMENT TO REGISTER FOR A TAX COMPLIANCE STATUS SYSTEM PIN CODE FROM THE SOUTH AFRICAN REVENUE SERVICE (SARS) AND IF NOT REGISTER AS PER 2.3 BELOW.</b>					

**PART B  
TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR BIDDING**

<b>1.</b>	<b>BID SUBMISSION:</b>
1.1.	BIDS MUST BE DELIVERED BY THE STIPULATED TIME TO THE CORRECT ADDRESS. LATE BIDS WILL NOT BE ACCEPTED FOR CONSIDERATION.
1.2.	<b>ALL BIDS MUST BE SUBMITTED ON THE OFFICIAL FORMS PROVIDED–(NOT TO BE RE-TYPED) OR IN THE MANNER PRESCRIBED IN THE BID DOCUMENT.</b>
1.3.	THIS BID IS SUBJECT TO THE PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT POLICY FRAMEWORK ACT, 2000 AND THE PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT REGULATIONS, 2022, THE GENERAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT (GCC) AND, IF APPLICABLE, ANY OTHER SPECIAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT.
1.4.	IF THE BID WAS INVITED THROUGH A CLOSE QUOTATION PROCESS; WHERE SUPPLIERS WERE SOURCED FROM CSD USING THE COMMODITY PROCESS; SUPPLIERS WHO WERE NOT INVITED WILL NOT BE CONSIDERED.
1.5.	USE OF OMISSION IN THE DOCUMENT IS PROHIBITED, ALL CORRECTIONS MUST BE INITIALLED BY TENDERER AND USE OF CORRECTION FLUID IS PROHIBITED.
1.6.	FAILING TO COMPLY WITH THE ABOVE REQUIREMENTS WILL RESULT IN THE BID BEING NON-RESPONSIVE.
1.7.	<b>THE SUCCESSFUL BIDDER WILL BE REQUIRED TO FILL IN AND SIGN A WRITTEN CONTRACT</b>
<b>2.</b>	<b>TAX COMPLIANCE REQUIREMENTS</b>
2.1	BIDDERS MUST ENSURE COMPLIANCE WITH THEIR TAX OBLIGATIONS.
2.2	BIDDERS ARE REQUIRED TO SUBMIT THEIR UNIQUE PERSONAL IDENTIFICATION NUMBER (PIN) ISSUED BY SARS TO ENABLE THE ORGAN OF STATE TO VERIFY THE TAXPAYER’S PROFILE AND TAX STATUS.
2.3	APPLICATION FOR TAX COMPLIANCE STATUS (TCS) PIN MAY BE MADE VIA E-FILING THROUGH THE SARS WEBSITE WWW.SARS.GOV.ZA.
2.4	BIDDERS MAY ALSO SUBMIT A PRINTED TCS CERTIFICATE TOGETHER WITH THE BID.
2.5	IN BIDS WHERE CONSORTIA / JOINT VENTURES / SUB-CONTRACTORS ARE INVOLVED; EACH PARTY MUST SUBMIT A SEPARATE TCS CERTIFICATE / PIN / CSD NUMBER.
2.6	WHERE NO TCS IS AVAILABLE BUT THE BIDDER IS REGISTERED ON THE CENTRAL SUPPLIER DATABASE (CSD), A CSD NUMBER MUST BE PROVIDED.
2.7	NO BIDS WILL BE CONSIDERED FROM PERSONS IN THE SERVICE OF THE STATE, COMPANIES WITH DIRECTORS WHO ARE PERSONS IN THE SERVICE OF THE STATE, OR CLOSE CORPORATIONS WITH MEMBERS PERSONS IN THE SERVICE OF THE STATE.”
<b>3.</b>	<b>COMPLIANCE AND RETURNABLES: THE FOLLOWING RETURNABLE DOCUMENTS MUST BE RETURNED WITH THE TENDER DOCUMENT</b>
3.1	SCM APPENDIX 1 INVITATION TO TENDER (SBD1 PART A)
3.2	SCM APPENDIX 2 – TERMS AND CONDITIONS FOR BIDDING (SBD1 PART B)
3.3	SCM APPENDIX 3 – OFFICIAL BRIEFING SESSION/SITE INSPECTION CERTIFICATE
3.4	SBD 4 - DECLARATION OF INTEREST FORM
3.5	SBD 6.1 - PREFERENCE POINTS CLAIM FORM IN TERMS OF THE PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT REGULATIONS 2022;

**NB: FAILURE TO PROVIDE / OR COMPLY WITH ANY OF THE ABOVE PARTICULARS MAY RENDER THE BID INVALID.**

SIGNATURE OF BIDDER: .....

CAPACITY UNDER WHICH THIS BID IS SIGNED: .....  
(Proof of authority must be submitted e.g. company resolution)

DATE: .....



## BIDDER'S DISCLOSURE

### 1. PURPOSE OF THE FORM

Any person (natural or juristic) may make an offer or offers in terms of this invitation to bid. In line with the principles of transparency, accountability, impartiality, and ethics as enshrined in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa and further expressed in various pieces of legislation, it is required for the bidder to make this declaration in respect of the details required hereunder.

Where a person/s are listed in the Register for Tender Defaulters and / or the List of Restricted Suppliers, that person will automatically be disqualified from the bid process.

### 2. Bidder's declaration

2.1 Is the bidder, or any of its directors / trustees / shareholders / members / partners or any person having a controlling interest<sup>1</sup> in the enterprise, employed by the state? **YES/NO**

2.1.1 If so, furnish particulars of the names, individual identity numbers, and, if applicable, state employee numbers of sole proprietor/ directors / trustees / shareholders / members/ partners or any person having a controlling interest in the enterprise, in table below.

Full Name	Identity Number	Name of institution	State

2.2 Do you, or any person connected with the bidder, have a relationship with any person who is employed by the procuring institution? **YES/NO**

2.2.1 If so, furnish particulars:

.....  
.....

<sup>1</sup> the power, by one person or a group of persons holding the majority of the equity of an enterprise, alternatively, the person/s having the deciding vote or power to influence or to direct the course and decisions of the enterprise.

2.3 Does the bidder or any of its directors / trustees / shareholders / members / partners or any person having a controlling interest in the enterprise have any interest in any other related enterprise whether or not they are bidding for this contract?

**YES/NO**

2.3.1 If so, furnish particulars:

.....  
.....

### 3 DECLARATION

I, \_\_\_\_\_ the \_\_\_\_\_ undersigned, (name)..... in submitting the accompanying bid, do hereby make the following statements that I certify to be true and complete in every respect:

- 3.1 I have read and I understand the contents of this disclosure;
- 3.2 I understand that the accompanying bid will be disqualified if this disclosure is found not to be true and complete in every respect;
- 3.3 The bidder has arrived at the accompanying bid independently from, and without consultation, communication, agreement or arrangement with any competitor. However, communication between partners in a joint venture or consortium<sup>2</sup> will not be construed as collusive bidding.
- 3.4 In addition, there have been no consultations, communications, agreements or arrangements with any competitor regarding the quality, quantity, specifications, prices, including methods, factors or formulas used to calculate prices, market allocation, the intention or decision to submit or not to submit the bid, bidding with the intention not to win the bid and conditions or delivery particulars of the products or services to which this bid invitation relates.
- 3.4 The terms of the accompanying bid have not been, and will not be, disclosed by the bidder, directly or indirectly, to any competitor, prior to the date and time of the official bid opening or of the awarding of the contract.
- 3.5 There have been no consultations, communications, agreements or arrangements made by the bidder with any official of the procuring institution in relation to this procurement process prior to and during the bidding process except to provide clarification on the bid submitted where so required by the institution; and the bidder was not involved in the drafting of the specifications or terms of reference for this bid.
- 3.6 I am aware that, in addition and without prejudice to any other remedy provided to combat any restrictive practices related to bids and contracts, bids that are suspicious will be reported to the Competition Commission for investigation and possible imposition of administrative penalties in terms of section 59 of the Competition Act No 89 of 1998 and or may be reported to the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) for criminal investigation and or may be restricted from conducting business with the public sector for a period not exceeding ten (10) years in terms of the Prevention and

<sup>2</sup> Joint venture or Consortium means an association of persons for the purpose of combining their expertise, property, capital, efforts, skill and knowledge in an activity for the execution of a contract.

Combating of Corrupt Activities Act No 12 of 2004 or any other applicable legislation.

I CERTIFY THAT THE INFORMATION FURNISHED IN PARAGRAPHS 1, 2 and 3 ABOVE IS CORRECT.  
I ACCEPT THAT THE STATE MAY REJECT THE BID OR ACT AGAINST ME IN TERMS OF PARAGRAPH 6 OF PFMA SCM INSTRUCTION 03 OF 2021/22 ON PREVENTING AND COMBATING ABUSE IN THE SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT SYSTEM SHOULD THIS DECLARATION PROVE TO BE FALSE.

.....	.....
Signature	Date
.....	.....
Position	Name of bidder

***Every question must be answered individually on this form, whether a relationship is present or not:  
Failure to do so and any non-disclosure on this Declaration will invalidate your tender/bid***

This document must be signed and submitted together with your bid.

## THE NATIONAL INDUSTRIAL PARTICIPATION PROGRAMME

### INTRODUCTION

The National Industrial Participation (NIP) Programme, which is applicable to all government procurement contracts that have an imported content, became effective on the 1 September 1996. The NIP policy and guidelines were fully endorsed by Cabinet on 30 April 1997. In terms of the Cabinet decision, all state and parastatal purchases / lease contracts (for goods, works and services) entered into after this date, are subject to the NIP requirements. NIP is obligatory and therefore must be complied with. The Industrial Participation Secretariat (IPS) of the Department of Trade and Industry (DTI) is charged with the responsibility of administering the programme.

### 1 PILLARS OF THE PROGRAMME

- 1.1 The NIP obligation is benchmarked on the imported content of the contract. Any contract having an imported content equal to or exceeding US\$ 10 million or other currency equivalent to US\$ 10 million will have a NIP obligation. This threshold of US\$ 10 million can be reached as follows:
  - (a) Any single contract with imported content exceeding US\$10 million.  
or
  - (b) Multiple contracts for the same goods, works or services each with imported content exceeding US\$3 million awarded to one seller over a 2-year period which in total exceeds US\$10 million.  
or
  - (c) A contract with a renewable option clause, where should the option be exercised the total value of the imported content will exceed US\$10 million.  
or
  - (d) Multiple suppliers of the same goods work or services under the same contract, where the value of the imported content of each allocation is equal to or exceeds US\$ 3 million worth of goods, works or services to the same government institution, which in total over a two (2) year period exceeds US\$10 million.
- 1.2 The NIP obligation applicable to suppliers in respect of sub-paragraphs 1.1 (a) to 1.1 (c) above will amount to 30 % of the imported content whilst suppliers in respect of paragraph 1.1 (d) shall incur 30 % of the total NIP obligation on a *pro-rata* basis.
- 1.3 To satisfy the NIP obligation, the DTI would negotiate and conclude agreements such as investments, joint ventures, sub-contracting, licensee production, export promotion, sourcing arrangements and research and development (R&D) with partners or suppliers.
- 1.4 A period of seven years has been identified as the time frame within which to discharge the obligation.

### 2 REQUIREMENTS OF THE DEPARTMENT OF TRADE AND INDUSTRY

- 2.1 In order to ensure effective implementation of the programme, successful bidders (contractors) are required to, immediately after the award of a contract that is in excess of **R10 million** (ten million Rands), submit details of such a contract to the DTI for reporting purposes.
- 2.2 The purpose for reporting details of contracts in excess of the amount of R10 million (ten million Rands) is to cater for multiple contracts for the same goods, works or services; renewable contracts and multiple suppliers for the same goods, works or services under the same contract as provided for in paragraphs 1.1.(b) to 1.1. (d) above.

### 3 BID SUBMISSION AND CONTRACT REPORTING REQUIREMENTS OF BIDDERS AND SUCCESSFUL BIDDERS (CONTRACTORS)

- 3.1 Bidders are required to sign and submit this Standard Bidding Document (SBD 5) together with the bid on the closing date and time.
- 3.2 In order to accommodate multiple contracts for the same goods, works or services; renewable contracts and multiple suppliers for the same goods, works or services under the same contract as indicated in sub-paragraphs 1.1 (b) to 1.1 (d) above and to enable the DTI in determining the NIP obligation, successful bidders (contractors) are required, immediately after being officially notified about any successful bid with a value in excess of R10 million (ten million Rands), to contact and furnish the DTI with the following information:
- Bid / contract number.
  - Description of the goods works or services.
  - Date on which the contract was accepted.
  - Name, address and contact details of the government institution.
  - Value of the contract.
  - Imported content of the contract, if possible.
- 3.3 The information required in paragraph 3.2 above must be sent to the Department of Trade and Industry, Private Bag X 84, Pretoria, 0001 for the attention of Mr Elias Malapane within five (5) working days after award of the contract. Mr Malapane may be contacted on telephone (012) 394 1401, facsimile (012) 394 2401 or e-mail at [Elias@thedti.gov.za](mailto:Elias@thedti.gov.za) for further details about the programme.

**4 PROCESS TO SATISFY THE NIP OBLIGATION**

- 4.1 Once the successful bidder (contractor) has made contact with and furnished the DTI with the information required, the following steps will be followed:
- a. the contractor and the DTI will determine the NIP obligation;
  - b. the contractor and the DTI will sign the NIP obligation agreement;
  - c. the contractor will submit a performance guarantee to the DTI;
  - d. the contractor will submit a business concept for consideration and approval by the DTI;
  - e. upon approval of the business concept by the DTI, the contractor will submit detailed business plans outlining the business concepts;
  - f. the contractor will implement the business plans; and
  - g. the contractor will submit bi-annual progress reports on approved plans to the DTI.
- 4.2 The NIP obligation agreement is between the DTI and the successful bidder (contractor) and, therefore, does not involve the purchasing institution.

Bid number .....	Closing date: .....
Name of bidder.....	
Postal address .....	
.....	
Signature.....	Name (in print).....
Date.....	

**PREFERENCE POINTS CLAIM FORM IN TERMS OF THE PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT REGULATIONS 2022**

This preference form must form part of all tenders invited. It contains general information and serves as a claim form for preference points for specific goals.

**NB: BEFORE COMPLETING THIS FORM, TENDERERS MUST STUDY THE GENERAL CONDITIONS, DEFINITIONS AND DIRECTIVES APPLICABLE IN RESPECT OF THE TENDER AND PREFERENTIAL PROCUREMENT REGULATIONS, 2022**

**1. GENERAL CONDITIONS**

1.1 The following preference point systems are applicable to invitations to tender:

- the 90/10 system for requirements with a Rand value above R50 000 000 (all applicable taxes included).

**1.2 To be completed by the organ of state**

- a) The applicable preference point system for this tender is the 90/10 preference point system.

1.3 Points for this tender (even in the case of a tender for income-generating contracts) shall be awarded for:

- (a) Price; and
- (b) Specific Goals.

**1.4 To be completed by the organ of state:**

The maximum points for this tender are allocated as follows:

	<b>POINTS</b>
<b>PRICE</b>	90
<b>SPECIFIC GOALS</b>	10
<b>Total points for Price and SPECIFIC GOALS</b>	<b>100</b>

- 1.5 Failure on the part of a tenderer to submit proof or documentation required in terms of this tender to claim points for specific goals with the tender, will be interpreted to mean that preference points for specific goals are not claimed.
- 1.6 The organ of state reserves the right to require of a tenderer, either before a tender is adjudicated or at any time subsequently, to substantiate any claim in regard to preferences, in any manner required by the organ of state.

## 2. DEFINITIONS

- (a) **“tender”** means a written offer in the form determined by an organ of state in response to an invitation to provide goods or services through price quotations, competitive tendering process or any other method envisaged in legislation;
- (b) **“price”** means an amount of money tendered for goods or services, and includes all applicable taxes less all unconditional discounts;
- (c) **“rand value”** means the total estimated value of a contract in Rand, calculated at the time of bid invitation, and includes all applicable taxes;
- (d) **“tender for income-generating contracts”** means a written offer in the form determined by an organ of state in response to an invitation for the origination of income-generating contracts through any method envisaged in legislation that will result in a legal agreement between the organ of state and a third party that produces revenue for the organ of state, and includes, but is not limited to, leasing and disposal of assets and concession contracts, excluding direct sales and disposal of assets through public auctions; and
- (e) **“the Act”** means the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act No. 5 of 2000).

### 3. FORMULAE FOR PROCUREMENT OF GOODS AND SERVICES

#### 3.1. POINTS AWARDED FOR PRICE

##### 3.1.1 THE 80/20 OR 90/10 PREFERENCE POINT SYSTEMS

A maximum of 90 points is allocated for price on the following basis:

**90/10**

$$P_s = 90 \left( 1 - \frac{P_t - P_{min}}{P_{min}} \right)$$

Where

$P_s$  = Points scored for price of tender under consideration

$P_t$  = Price of tender under consideration

$P_{min}$  = Price of lowest acceptable tender

### 4. POINTS AWARDED FOR SPECIFIC GOALS

- 4.1. In terms of Regulation 4(2); 5(2); 6(2) and 7(2) of the Preferential Procurement Regulations, preference points must be awarded for specific goals stated in the tender. For the purposes of this tender the tenderer will be allocated points based on the goals stated in table 1 below as may be supported by proof/ documentation stated in the conditions of this tender:
- 4.2. In cases where organs of state intend to use Regulation 3(2) of the Regulations, which states that, if it is unclear whether the 80/20 or 90/10 preference point system applies, an organ of state must, in the tender documents, stipulate in the case of—
- (a) an invitation for tender for income-generating contracts, that either the 80/20 or 90/10 preference point system will apply and that the highest acceptable tender will be used to determine the applicable preference point system; or
  - (b) any other invitation for tender, that either the 80/20 or 90/10 preference point system will apply and that the lowest acceptable tender will be used to determine the applicable preference point system,
- then the organ of state must indicate the points allocated for specific goals for both the 90/10 and 80/20 preference point system.



**Table 1: Specific goals for the tender and points claimed are indicated per the table below.**

**Note to tenderers: The tenderer must indicate how they claim points for each preference point system.)**

The specific goals allocated points in terms of this tender	The specific goals allocated points in terms of this tender	Number of points allocated (90/10 system)
<u>EPC</u>	<b>1. Bidder which is at least 51% owned by</b>	<b>Max points = 6 points</b>
	a) black people	3 points
	b) black people who are youth	1 point
	c) black people who are women	1 point
	d) black people with disabilities	1 point
	<b>2. Promotion of Tenderer's located in a Specific Area</b>	<b>Max points = 2 points</b>
	For CIDB grade 7 and above work: Operating business address located within the province	2 points
	<b>3. The creation of new jobs or the intensification of labour absorption</b>	<b>Max points = 2 points</b>
	Local Labour	2 points

**DECLARATION WITH REGARD TO COMPANY/FIRM**

4.3. Name of company/firm.....

4.4. Company registration number: .....

4.5. TYPE OF COMPANY/ FIRM

- Partnership/Joint Venture / Consortium
  - One-person business/sole propriety
  - Close corporation
  - Public Company
  - Personal Liability Company
  - (Pty) Limited
  - Non-Profit Company
  - State Owned Company
- [TICK APPLICABLE BOX]

4.6. I, the undersigned, who is duly authorised to do so on behalf of the company/firm, certify that the points claimed, based on the specific goals as advised in the tender, qualifies the company/ firm for the preference(s) shown and I acknowledge that:

- i) The information furnished is true and correct;
- ii) The preference points claimed are in accordance with the General Conditions as indicated in paragraph 1 of this form;
- iii) In the event of a contract being awarded as a result of points claimed as shown in paragraphs 1.4 and 4.2, the contractor may be required to furnish documentary proof to the satisfaction of the organ of state that the claims are correct;
- iv) If the specific goals have been claimed or obtained on a fraudulent basis or any of the conditions of contract have not been fulfilled, the organ of state may, in addition to any other remedy it may have –

- (a) disqualify the person from the tendering process;
- (b) recover costs, losses or damages it has incurred or suffered as a result of that person's conduct;
- (c) cancel the contract and claim any damages which it has suffered as a result of having to make less favourable arrangements due to such cancellation;
- (d) recommend that the tenderer or contractor, its shareholders and directors, or only the shareholders and directors who acted on a fraudulent basis, be restricted from obtaining business from any organ of state for a period not exceeding 10 years, after the *audi alteram partem* (hear the other side) rule has been applied; and
- (e) forward the matter for criminal prosecution, if deemed necessary.

..... <b>SIGNATURE(S) OF TENDERER(S)</b>	
<b>SURNAME AND NAME:</b>	.....
<b>DATE:</b>	.....
<b>ADDRESS:</b>	..... ..... ..... .....

**B-BBEE EXEMPTED AFFIDAVIT FOR EXEMPTED MICRO ENTERPRISES (ISSUED IN TERMS OF THE AMENDED CONSTRUCTION SECTOR CODE) (Gazette Vol. 630 No. 41287)  
Issued in terms of paragraph 3.6.2.4.1 (B)**

I, the undersigned,

<b>Full name &amp; Surname</b>	
<b>Identity number</b>	

Hereby declare under oath as follows:

1. The contents of this statement are to the best of my knowledge a true reflection of the facts.
2. I am a member / director / owner of the following enterprise and am duly authorised to act on its behalf:

<b>Enterprise Name</b>			
<b>Trading Name (If Applicable):</b>			
<b>Registration Number</b>			
<b>Enterprise Physical Address:</b>			
<b>Type of Entity (CC, (Pty) Ltd, Sole Prop etc.):</b>			
<b>Nature of Business:</b>	<b>BEP</b> (Built Environment Professional)	Contractor	Supplier
<b>Definition of "Black People"</b>	<p>As per the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act 53 of 2003 as Amended by Act No 46 of 2013 "Black People" is a generic term which means Africans, Coloureds and Indians –</p> <p>(a) who are citizens of the Republic of South Africa by birth or descent; or</p> <p>(b) who became citizens of the Republic of South Africa by naturalisation-</p> <p>I. before 27 April 1994; or</p> <p>II. on or after 27 April 1994 and who would have been entitled to acquire citizenship by naturalization prior to that date;"</p>		
<b>Definition of "Black Designated Groups"</b>	<p>"Black Designated Groups means:</p> <p>(a) unemployed black people not attending and not required by law to attend an educational institution and not awaiting admission to an educational institution;</p> <p>(b) Black people who are youth as defined in the National Youth Commission Act of 1996;</p> <p>(c) Black people who are persons with disabilities as defined in the Code of Good Practice on employment of people with disabilities issued under the Employment Equity Act;</p> <p>(d) Black people living in rural and under-developed areas;</p> <p>(e) Black military veterans who qualifies to be called a military veteran in terms of the Military Veterans Act 18 of 2011;"</p>		

**Construction Sector Affidavit**

3. I hereby declare under Oath that:

- The Enterprise is \_\_\_\_\_% Black Owned as per Amended Code Series 100 of the amended Codes of Good Practice issued under section 9 (1) of B-BBEE Act No 53 of 2003 as amended by Act No 46 of 2013,
- The Enterprise is \_\_\_\_\_% Black Female Owned as per Amended Code Series 100 of the Amended Codes of Good Practice issued under section 9 (1) of B-BBEE Act No 53 of 2003 as Amended by Act No 46 of 2013,
- The Enterprise is \_\_\_\_\_% Black Designated Group Owned as per Amended Code Series 100 of the Amended Codes of Good Practice issued under section 9 (1) of B-BBEE Act No 53 of 2003 as Amended by Act No 46 of 2013,
- Black Designated Group Owned % Breakdown as per the definition stated above:
  - Black Youth % = \_\_\_\_\_%
  - Black Disabled % = \_\_\_\_\_%
  - Black Unemployed % = \_\_\_\_\_%
  - Black People living in Rural areas % = \_\_\_\_\_%
  - Black Military Veterans % = \_\_\_\_\_%

BEP	R1.8 million	
Contractor	R3.0 million	
Supplier	R3.0 million	

*If the turnover exceeds the applicable amount in the table above then this affidavit is no longer applicable and an EME certificate must be obtained from a rating agency accredited by SANAS or when applicable a B-BBEE Verification Professional Regulator appointed by the Minister of Trade and Industry.*

- Based on the Financial Statements/Management Accounts and other information available on the latest financial year-end of \_\_\_/\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_\_, (dd/mm/yyyy) the annual Total Revenue was R3,000,000.00 (3 Million Rands) or less
- Please Confirm on the below table the B-BBEE Level Contributor, **by ticking the applicable box.**

100% Black Owned	<b>Level One</b> (135% B-BBEE procurement recognition level)	
At least 51% Black Owned	<b>Level Two</b> (125% B-BBEE procurement recognition level)	
At least 30% Black Owned	<b>Level Four</b> (100% B-BBEE procurement recognition level)	
Less than 30% Black Owned	<b>Level Five</b> (80% B-BBEE procurement recognition level)	

4. I know and understand the contents of this affidavit and I have no objection to take the prescribed oath and consider the oath binding on my conscience and on the Owners of the Enterprise, which I represent in this matter.

5. The sworn affidavit will be valid for a period of 12 months from the date signed by commissioner.

**Stamp**

Deponent Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_/\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_  
**Signature of Commissioner of Oaths**

**FAILURE TO FULLY COMPLETE DATE AND SIGN THIS FORM WILL REUSLTS TO NON-AWARD OF PREFERENCE POINTS**

## E. B-BBEE STATUS LEVEL VERIFICATION CERTIFICATE

Notes to tenderer:

1. The tenderer shall submit proof of B-BBEE Status Level of Contributor by submitting a copy of a valid B-BBEE Verification Certificate issued in accordance with the Amended Construction Sector Code published in Notice 931 of 2017 of Government Gazette No. 41287 of 1 December 2017.
2. The certificate shall:
  - (i) have been issued by a verification agency accredited by the South African National Accreditation System (SANAS); or
  - (ii) in the case of an Exempted Micro Enterprise (EME) with a total annual revenue of R3 million and less, be in the form of a sworn affidavit, in respect of their ownership and annual turnover, for the year ending not earlier than 12 (twelve) months prior to the tender closing date; and
  - (iii) have a date of issue not earlier than 12 (twelve) months prior to the tender closing date.
3. A consortium or joint venture (including unincorporated consortia and joint ventures) must submit a consolidated B-BBEE Status Level Verification Certificate. In addition, the consolidated B-BBEE Status Level Verification Certificate for unincorporated joint ventures shall only be applicable to this project (Tender No. to be indicated on the certificate).
4. An enterprise will qualify as an Exempted Micro Enterprise (EME) if it has a total annual revenue of R3 million or less, and is deemed to have the following B-BBEE Status in accordance with their black ownership levels:
  - (i) if less than 30% Black Owned then “**Level Five Contributor**”;
  - (ii) if at least 30% Black Owned but less than 51% Black Owned then “**Level Four Contributor**”;
  - (iii) if at least 51% Black Owned but less than 100% Black Owned, then “**Level Two Contributor**”;
  - (iv) if 100% Black Owned then “**Level One Contributor**”.
5. Tenderers are advised that any misrepresentation in the affidavits is a criminal offence.

**F. CERTIFICATE OF AUTHORITY FOR SIGNATORY**

The Tenderer must indicate the enterprise status by ticking the appropriate box hereunder.

(I) SOLE PROPRIETOR	(II) CLOSE CORPORATION	(III) PARTNERSHIP	(IV) COMPANY	(V) JOINT VENTURE / CONSORTIUM	
				Incorporated	
				Unincorporated	

**Note:**

The following document must be attached to this form according to the status of the enterprise, in the form of a resolution authorising the signatory to sign all documents and any contract resulting therefrom on behalf of the enterprise, and **such resolution shall include a specimen signature of the signatory.**

Cooperative: 'Resolution of the Members'  
 Close Corporation: 'Resolution of the Members'  
 Company: 'Resolution of the Board' signed by the chairperson  
 Joint Venture / Consortium: 'Resolution/agreement passed/reached' signed by the authorised representatives of the enterprises

**MEMBERS RESOLUTION**

**CONTRACT NO.**

ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T.....  
.....  
.....

Close Corporation / Company / Partnership / Trust /Sole proprietor or sole trader Name:

Number: \_\_\_\_\_ Registration  
DIRECTIONS OF THE COMPANY etc RESOLVED that

\_\_\_\_\_, in his/her capacity as \_\_\_\_\_, is authorised to make applications on behalf of the Close Corporation / Company / Partnership / Trust /Sole proprietor or sole trader for: any documentation relating to the business (which is not necessarily a change of ownership). The nominated person will also have access to webpage for the business.

Signature(s) for Close Corporation / Company / Partnership / Trust/ Sole proprietor or sole trader.  
(sole member still must sign this resolution)

Signature of members:

Name	Signature	Date
1. _____	_____	_____.
2. _____	_____	_____.
3. _____	_____	_____.
4. _____	_____	_____.
5. _____	_____	_____.
6. _____	_____	_____.

**Specimen signature of the signatory:** \_\_\_\_\_.

**Failure to complete, sign and date the relevant certificate(s) set out hereafter or failure to provide the certificate(s) in the form of a resolution as described above shall result in the tender being considered non-responsive and rejected in terms of clause C.3.8 of the Conditions of Tender.**



**G. DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION EXPERIENCE**

The following is a statement of work of similar nature recently successfully executed by myself / ourselves:

EMPLOYER: CONTACT PERSON AND TELEPHONE NUMBER	EMPLOYER'S AGENT: CONTACT PERSON AND TELEPHONE NUMBER	NATURE OF WORK	VALUE OF WORK (inclusive of VAT)	DATE COMPLETED OR EXPECTED TO BE COMPLETED

*Attach additional pages if more space is required*

SIGNATURE: .....

DATE: .....

*(of person authorised to sign on behalf of the Tenderer)*

**H. KEY PERSONNEL**

**H1. KEY PERSONNEL - MANAGEMENT**

The Tenderer must insert in the spaces provided below a list of the key personnel to be employed in the management of the construction of the Works, together with a resume of their experience with particular reference to the construction of similar Works.

The Tenderer shall attach the curriculum vitae of the listed key management personnel to the page included below for this purpose.

DESIGNATION	NAME	PROJECT TYPE	VALUE OF WORK	YEAR COMPLETED
LEAD PROJECT ENGINEER/MANAGER				
CONTRACTS MANAGER				
CONSTRUCTION MANAGER				
FOREMAN/SUPERVISOR				
DESIGN CIVIL ENGINEER/TECHNOLOGIST				

*Attach additional pages if more space is required*

SIGNATURE: .....  
 (of person authorised to sign on behalf of the Tenderer)

DATE: .....

**H2. KEY PERSONNEL – LABOUR ENHANCED ACTIVITIES**

Bidders shall employ in labour-enhanced works only those supervisory and management staff that have completed the required Skills Programme in terms of Appendix C of the “Guidelines for the implementation of labour-enhanced infrastructure projects under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) Third Edition 2015”:

- Foremen / Supervisors at NQF level 4 “National Certificate: Supervision of Civil Engineering Construction Processes”;
- Site Agent / Construction Manager at NQF level 5 "Manage Labour-Intensive Construction Processes" or equivalent Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (QCTO) qualifications at NQF level 5 or 7.

Tenderers’ attention is drawn to the required minimum supervisor to worker ratio for this project stated in clause F2.3 of Part F of the Particular Specifications.

The Tenderer must insert in the spaces provided below the relevant details of the personnel to be employed in the construction of the Works possessing the required qualifications in the supervision or management of LIC projects. A copy of the relevant qualification certificate for each such person shall be attached to the next page below.

DESIGNATION	NAME	NAME OF TRAINING INSTITUTION	QUALIFICATION OBTAINED IN THE SUPERVISION OR MANAGEMENT OF LIC PROJECTS	YEAR QUALIFICATION OBTAINED

*Attach additional pages if more space is required*

SIGNATURE: .....

DATE: .....

*(of person authorised to sign on behalf of the Tenderer)*

**Failure to list the names, designations, relevant qualification certificates and CV’s of the key personnel for Labour Enhanced Activities will result in tender being evaluated as non-responsive**

**CURRICULUM VITAE OF KEY PERSONNEL - MANAGEMENT**

*Refer to H1.*

*Curriculum Vitae of key management personnel to be attached to this page.*

and

**QUALIFICATIONS OF KEY PERSONNEL – LABOUR ENHANCED ACTIVITIES**

*Refer to H2.*

*Relevant qualification certificates to be attached to this page for each person possessing the required qualifications in the supervision or management of LIC projects.*

**I. CONSTRUCTION EQUIPMENT**

The following are lists of major construction equipment that I / we presently own or will acquire for this contract if my / our tender is accepted.

**(a) Details of major construction equipment owned by me / us:**

DESCRIPTION ( <i>type, size and capacity</i> )	QUANTITY	YEAR OF MANUFACTURE

*Attach additional pages if more space is required*

**(b) Details of major construction equipment that will be acquired:**

DESCRIPTION ( <i>type, size and capacity</i> )	QUANTITY	HOW ACQUIRED	
		HIRE / BUY	SOURCE

*Attach additional pages if more space is required*

SIGNATURE: .....

DATE: .....

*(of person authorised to sign on behalf of the Tenderer)*

**J. PROPOSED SUB-CONTRACTING/SUB-CONSULTANT**

I/We hereby notify you that it is my/our intention to employ the following subcontractors for work under this contract. If I/we am/are awarded a contract I/we agree that this notification does not change the requirement for me/us to submit the names of proposed subcontractors in accordance with the requirements of the contract for such appointments.

Acceptance of this tender shall not be construed as approval of any or all of the listed subcontractors. Should any or all of the subcontractors not be approved subsequent to the acceptance of the tender, it shall in no way invalidate this tender, and the tendered unit rates for the various items of work shall remain final and binding, even in the event of a subcontractor not listed below being approved by the Employer. **Procurement and Payment of subcontractors shall be in accordance with the provisions of Part G: Small Contractor Development.**

NAME OF SUB-CONTRACTOR/ SUB-CONSULTANT	CSD NUMBER	DESIGNATED GROUP AND OWNERSHIP %	B-BBEE LEVEL	NATURE OF WORK	PERCENTAGE TO BE SUB-CONTRACTED/ SUB-CONSULTED

*Attach additional pages if more space is required.*

NB: The subcontractors listed above will not contribute to the achievements of the objectives specified in Section C3.3 Part G of this tender document.

SIGNATURE: .....

DATE: .....

*(of person authorised to sign on behalf of the Tenderer)*

## K. PARTICIPATION IN JOB CREATION USING LOCAL LABOUR

The Tenderer shall be required to participate in job creation (employment of local labour) by executing various portions of the Works using local labour (unskilled or semi-skilled), recruited from the local community, who are South African Citizens or foreigners in possession of a work visa issued by the Department of Home Affairs (only one such foreigner may be employed on any project). Proof of citizenship or work visa may be audited during the contract period.

The creation of one job shall mean the employment, for any period of time, of one such unskilled or semi-skilled labourer from the local community.

The Tenderer shall note the requirements for Job Creation Reporting for EPWP as set out in Part F: Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) of the project specifications.

The number of jobs to be created using such local labour is inclusive of the local labour employed to execute various portions of the Works by both the main Contractor and any subcontractors, including the small development subcontractors in terms of Part G: Small Contractor Development of the project specifications.

The number of jobs to be created using such local labour shall include for a minimum percentage allocation to the following individual targeted groups:

- 60% Women;
- 55% Youth; and
- 2% Disabled.

The minimum required content of such local labour for this project shall be calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{Minimum required content of such local labour (\%)} \\ = & \frac{(100 \times \text{amount spent on wages for such local labour (excluding VAT)})}{(\text{Subtotal 1* (excluding contingencies, contract price adjustment and VAT)})} \end{aligned}$$

*\*Subtotal 1 is obtained from the Tender Summary under C2.2 Bill of Quantities (Activity Schedule)*

The minimum required content of such local labour for this project shall be 6% of the construction value.

For purposes of completing the table on the next page containing the Tenderer's declaration with respect to participation in job creation using local labour, the value of Subtotal 1\* (excluding contingencies, contract price adjustment and VAT) which is obtained from the Tender Summary under C2.2 Bill of Quantities, shall be used.

**TENDERER'S DECLARATION WITH RESPECT TO PARTICIPATION IN JOB CREATION USING LOCAL LABOUR:**

The Tenderer shall complete the table below reflecting the anticipated local labour force to be employed on this contract, including such local labour employed by subcontractors.

I/We hereby tender to participate in job creation through the employment of local labour by creating the following number of jobs using unskilled or semi-skilled labourers, recruited from the local community, who are South African Citizens or foreigners in possession of a work visa issued by the Department of Home Affairs (only one such foreigner may be employed on any project), including for a minimum allocation of 60% Women, 55% Youth and 2% Disabled:

Local labour comprising unskilled or semi-skilled labourers recruited from the local community	Anticipated number of jobs to be created	Total number of person-days anticipated	Wage rate per person-day (excluding VAT) (Rand)	Total wage cost (excluding VAT) (Rand)
Contractor's local labour content				
Subcontractors' local labour content				
Total anticipated wage cost of local labour content (excluding VAT)				R
Subtotal 1* (excluding contingencies, contract price adjustment and VAT)				R
Hence anticipated local labour content expressed as a percentage of Subtotal 1* (excluding contingencies, contract price adjustment and VAT))				%
<i>Note: Should this percentage not equal or exceed the specified minimum percentage, the Tender will be considered non-responsive in terms of subclause C.3.8 of the Conditions of Tender and such a tender shall be rejected.</i>				
Specified minimum local labour content				6 %

***A penalty shall be applied to any shortfall in the local labour content achieved when measured against the specified minimum local labour content, as set out in Part F: Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) of the project specifications. The penalty shall not apply to shortfalls in the allocations to the individual target groups (i.e., Women/Youth/Disabled), only to shortfalls in the total local labour content achieved.***

The undersigned, who warrants that he/she is duly authorized to do so on behalf of the Tenderer, confirms that he/she understands the conditions for such participation and confirms that the tender satisfies the conditions for participation in job creation through the employment of local labour.

Name: .....

Duly authorized to sign on behalf of: .....

SIGNATURE: .....

DATE: .....

(Of person authorised to sign on behalf of the Tenderer)

**Failure to complete, sign and date this form shall result in the tender being considered non-responsive and rejected in terms of clause C.3.8 of the Conditions of Tender.**



**L. BIDDERS HEALTH AND SAFETY DECLARATION**

In terms of Regulation 5(1)(h) of the OHS Act 1993 Construction Regulations 2014 (referred to as 'the Regulations' hereafter), a Contractor may only be appointed to perform construction work if the Employer is satisfied that the Contractor has the necessary competencies and resources to carry out the work safely in accordance with the Occupational Health and Safety Act No 85 of 1993, as amended and the OHS Act 1993 Construction Regulations 2014.

To that effect a person duly authorised by the Tenderer must complete and sign the declaration hereafter in detail.

**Declaration by Tenderer**

1. I, the undersigned, hereby declare and confirm that I am fully conversant with the Occupational Health and Safety Act No. 85 of 1993 (as amended by the Occupational Health and Safety Amendment Act No. 181 of 1993), and the OHS Act 1993 Construction Regulations 2014.
2. I hereby declare that my company has the competence and the necessary resources to safely carry out the construction work under this contract in compliance with the Construction Regulations and the Employer's Health and Safety Specification.
3. I propose to achieve compliance with the Regulations by one of the following:
  - (a) From my own competent resources as detailed in 4(a) hereafter: ..... **\*Yes / No**
  - (b) From my own resources or still to be appointed, and trained until competency is achieved, as detailed in 4(b) hereafter: ..... **\*Yes / No**
  - (c) From outside sources by appointment of competent specialist subcontractors as detailed in 4(c) hereafter: ..... **\*Yes / No**

(\* = delete whatever is not applicable)

4. Details of resources I propose:

*Note: Competent resources shall include safety personnel such as the construction manager, construction health and safety officer and construction supervisor as defined in Regulation 8, and competent persons as defined in the OHS Act 1993 Construction Regulations 2014, as applicable to this contract.*

- (a) Details of the competent and qualified key persons from my company's own resources, who will form part of the contract team:

NAME OF COMPETENT PERSONS	POSITION TO BE FILLED BY COMPETENT PERSONS

- (b) Details of training of persons from my company's own resources (or to be hired) who still have to be trained to achieve the necessary competency:
  - (i) By whom will training be provided? .....
  - (ii) When will training be undertaken? .....
  - (iii) List the positions to be filled by persons to be trained or hired: .....
- (c) Details of competent resources to be appointed as subcontractors if competent persons cannot be supplied from own company:

Name of proposed subcontractor: .....

Qualifications or details of competency of the subcontractor: .....

.....  
.....

- 5. I hereby undertake, if my tender is accepted, to provide, before commencement of the works under the contract, a suitable, sufficiently documented and coherent site-specific Health and Safety Plan in accordance with Regulation 7(1)(a) of the Construction Regulations, which plan shall be subject to approval by the Employer.
- 6. I confirm that copies of my company's approved Health and Safety Plan, the Employer's Health and Safety Specification as well as the OHSA 1993 Construction Regulations 2014 will be provided on site and will at all times be available for inspection by the Contractor's personnel, the Employer's personnel, the Employer's Agent, Construction Health and Safety Agent, visitors, and officials and inspectors of the Department of Labour.
- 7. I hereby confirm that adequate provision has been made in my tendered rates and prices in the schedule of quantities to cover the cost of all resources, actions, training and all health and safety measures envisaged in the OHSA 1993 Construction Regulations 2014, and that I will be liable for any penalties that may be applied in terms of the said Regulations (Regulation 33) as a result of contravening or failing to comply with the provisions of the Act and the Regulations.
- 8. I agree that my failure to complete and execute this declaration to the satisfaction of the Employer will mean that I am unable to comply with the requirements of the OHSA 1993 Construction Regulations 2014, and accept that my tender will be prejudiced and may be rejected at the discretion of the Employer.

SIGNATURE: .....

DATE: .....

*(of person authorised to sign on behalf of the Tenderer)*

**M. DEVIATIONS AND QUALIFICATIONS**

Should the Tenderer wish to make any deviation from or any qualification to the Special Conditions of Contract, Specifications, Bill of Quantities, or Drawings, or should he wish to qualify the tender in any way, he shall indicate the proposals clearly hereunder or alternatively on photocopies of the original tender documentation which shall be attached to this page.

**Please note:** The extent of deviations from the tender documents issued by the Employer prior to the tender closing date is limited to those permissible in terms of the Conditions of Tender. Please also refer to Returnable Schedule N.

SECTION	PAGE	DEVIATION OR QUALIFICATION, INCLUDING REFERENCE CLAUSE OR ITEM NUMBER

*Attach additional pages if more space is required*

SIGNATURE: .....

DATE: .....

*(of person authorised to sign on behalf of the Tenderer)*

**N. SCHEDULE OF ALTERNATIVE TENDERS**

The attention of tenderers is specifically drawn to clause C.2.12 Alternative tender offers of Annex C Standard Conditions of Tender and to clause C.2.12 of section T1.2 TENDER DATA in this project document.

An alternative tender offer or design shall be considered only if the main tender offer has also been submitted in accordance with the requirements of clauses C.2.12.1 and C.2.12.2 of Annex C and such main tender offer is the winning tender as stated in clause C.2.12.3 of Annex C.

Such alternative offers shall be described, measured and priced in sufficient detail to enable the Employer to evaluate the alternative. The Tenderer shall set out the proposal clearly hereunder or alternatively on photocopies of the original tender documentation which shall be attached to this page.

<b>SECTION</b>	<b>PAGE</b>	<b>ALTERNATIVE OFFER, INCLUDING REFERENCE CLAUSE OR ITEM NUMBER</b>

SIGNATURE: .....

DATE: .....

*(of person authorised to sign on behalf of the Tenderer)*

**O. TECHNICAL PROPOSAL**

The tenderer is required to submit a technical proposal which covers the following criteria.

**O1. Experience of key personnel**

The experience of assigned staff member in relation to the scope of work will be evaluated from three different points of view:

- 1) General experience (total duration of professional activity), level of education and training and positions held of each discipline specific team leader.
- 2) The education, training, skills and experience of the Assigned Staff in the specific sector, field, subject, etc which is directly linked to the scope of work.
- 3) The key staff members' / experts' knowledge of issues which the tenderer considers pertinent to the project e.g. local conditions, affected communities, legislation, techniques etc.

A CV of the Lead project manager/Engineer, contract manager, construction manager design civil engineers/specialists and foreman should be attached to this schedule:

Each CV should be structured under the following headings:

- 1 Personal particulars
  - name
  - date and place of birth
  - place (s) of tertiary education and dates associated therewith
  - professional awards
- 2 Qualifications (degrees, diplomas, grades of membership of professional societies and professional registrations)
- 3 Skills
- 4 Name of current employer and position in enterprise
- 5 Overview of post graduate / diploma experience (year, organization and position)
- 6 Outline of recent assignments / experience that has a bearing on the scope of work

---

The undersigned, who warrants that he / she is duly authorised to do so on behalf of the enterprise, confirms that the contents of this schedule are within my personal knowledge and are to the best of my belief both true and correct.

Signed

Date

Name

Position

**O2. Road Upgrade projects experience**

List number of completed Road Upgrade projects.

The evaluation will consider the nature of the reference projects, scope of services provided, and Employer/Client completion certificate.

Reference Letters including Final Approval Certificates/ Completion Certificates not older than 15 years per project to be provided with contact details of references.

The undersigned, who warrants that he / she is duly authorised to do so on behalf of the enterprise, confirms that the contents of this schedule are within my personal knowledge and are to the best of my belief both true and correct.

Signed

Date

.....  
Name

.....  
Position

## **P. NOTICES TO TENDERERS REGARDING THE COMPLETION OF FORMS**

PLEASE NOTE THAT THIS TENDER IS SUBJECT TO TREASURY REGULATIONS 16A ISSUED IN TERMS OF THE PUBLIC FINANCE MANAGEMENT ACT, 1999, THE KWAZULU-NATAL SUPPLY CHAIN MANAGEMENT POLICY FRAMEWORK AND THE GENERAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT.

1. Unless inconsistent with or expressly indicated otherwise by the context, the singular shall include the plural and vice versa and with words importing the masculine gender shall include the feminine and the neuter.
2. Under no circumstances whatsoever may the tender forms be retyped or redrafted. Photocopies of the original tender documentation may be used, but an original signature must appear on such photocopies.
3. The tenderer is advised to check the number of pages and to satisfy himself that none are missing or duplicated.
4. Tender submitted must be complete in all respects.
5. Tender shall be lodged at the address indicated not later than the closing time specified for their receipt, and in accordance with the directives in the tender documents.
6. Each tender shall be addressed in accordance with the directives in the tender documents and shall be lodged in a separate sealed envelope, with the name and address of the tenderer, the tender number and closing date indicated on the envelope. The envelope shall not contain documents relating to any tender other than that shown on the envelope. If this provision is not complied with, such tender may be rejected as being invalid.
7. All tenders received in sealed envelopes with the relevant tender numbers on the envelopes are kept unopened in safe custody until the closing time of the tender. Where, however, a tender is received open, it shall be sealed. If it is received without a tender number on the envelope, it shall be opened, the tender number ascertained, the envelope sealed, and the tender number written on the envelope.
8. A specific box is provided for the receipt of tenders, and no tender found in any other box or elsewhere after the closing date and time of tender will be considered.
9. No tender sent through the post will be considered if it is received after the closing date and time stipulated in the tender documentation, and proof of posting will not be accepted as proof of delivery.
10. No tender submitted by telefax, telegraphic or other electronic means will be considered.
11. Tender documents must not be included in packages containing samples. Such tenders may be rejected as being invalid.
12. Any alteration made by the tenderer must be initialled. If not initialled the tenderer may be disqualified.
13. Use of correcting fluid is prohibited
14. Tenders documents will be opened in public as soon as practicable after the closing time of tender.
15. Where practical, prices are made public at the time of opening tender documents.

**Q. ACCEPTABLE PROOF, RIGHTS TO AWARD & PRICE NEGOTIATION**

**a) Acceptable Proof for the allocation of Specific Goals Points**

The specific goals allocated points in terms of this tender	The specific goals allocated points in terms of this tender	Acceptable Returnable / Evidence
<u>EPC</u>	<b>1. An EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by</b>	CIPC company registration documents and BBB-EE Certificate or Sworn affidavit.
	e) black people	
	f) black people who are youth	
	g) black people who are women	
	h) black people with disabilities	Letter form the Dr. confirming the disability
	<b>2. Promotion of Tenderer's located in a Specific Area</b>	CIPC company registration documents or Lease agreement or Municipal bill or permit to occupy.
	The promotion of enterprises located in the KwaZulu-Natal province	
	The promotion of enterprises located in a specific District municipality	
	The promotion of enterprises located in a specific local municipality	
	<b>3. The creation of new jobs or the intensification of labour absorption</b>	Proof of participation on job creation as per the returnable schedule K must be at least 2 % above the Specified minimum local labour content.
Local Labour		

**b) Rights to Award**

- KwaZulu-Natal Department of Transport reserves the right to call for presentations from shortlisted suppliers or ***Reserves the Right to accept bid In Whole or In Part.***
- Not to make any award in this bid or accept any tender submitted,
- Award the project to more than one (1) tenderer for the same activity
- Request further technical information from any tenderer after the closing date,
- Verify information and documentation of the tenderer(s),
- Not to accept any of the tender proposals submitted,
- To withdraw or amend any of the tender conditions by notice in writing to all tenderer prior to closing of the bid and post award, and
- If an incorrect award has been made to remedy the matter in any lawful manner it may deem fit.



**c) Price Negotiation at quotation stage.**

KwaZulu-Natal Department of Transport reserves the right to negotiate with the shortlisted tenderer prior and/or post award.

The terms and conditions for negotiations will be communicated to the shortlisted tenderers prior to invitation to negotiations.

The negotiation terms and conditions may include presentations and/or site visits. This phase is meant to ensure the conditions of tender and projects will be implementable.

KwaZulu-Natal Department of Transport supports the spirit of economic empowerment and recognizes that real empowerment can only be achieved through individuals and businesses conducting themselves in accordance with the Constitution and in an honest, fair, equitable, transparent and legally compliant manner. Against this background the KwaZulu-Natal Department of Transport does not support any form of fronting.

## **CONTRACT**

**PART C1: AGREEMENTS AND CONTRACT DATA**

**PART C2: PRICING DATA**

**PART C3: SCOPE OF WORK**

**PART C4: SITE INFORMATION**

## CONTRACT

<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS</b>	<b>Page</b>	<b>Colour</b>
<b>PART C1: AGREEMENTS AND CONTRACT DATA</b>		
<b>C1.1: FORM OF OFFER AND ACCEPTANCE .....</b>	C3	Yellow
<b>C1.1.1: OFFER .....</b>	C3	Yellow
<b>C1.1.2: ACCEPTANCE.....</b>	C4	Yellow
<b>C1.1.3: SCHEDULE OF DEVIATIONS .....</b>	C5	Yellow
<b>C1.2: CONTRACT DATA .....</b>	C7	Yellow
<b>C1.2.1: CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT .....</b>	C7	Yellow
<b>C1.2.2: DATA PROVIDED BY THE EMPLOYER .....</b>	C9	Yellow
<b>C1.2.3: DATA PROVIDED BY THE BIDDER.....</b>	C13	Yellow
<b>C1.3: INSURANCE .....</b>	C14	White
<b>C1.4: AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 37(2) OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT NO. 85 OF 1993 .....</b>	C15	White
<b>C1.5: RETENTION MONEY GUARANTEE .....</b>	C17	White
<b>C1.6: TRANSFER OF RIGHTS.....</b>	C19	White
<b>PART C2: PRICING DATA</b>		
<b>C2.1: PRICING ASSUMPTIONS .....</b>	C20	Yellow
<b>C2.2: BILL OF QUANTITIES.....</b>	C22	Yellow
<b>PART C3: SCOPE OF WORK</b>		
<b>TABLE OF CONTENTS.....</b>	C26	Blue
<b>C3.1: STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS .....</b>	C27	Blue
<b>C3.2: PROJECT SPECIFICATIONS.....</b>	C27	Blue
<b>C3.3: PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS .....</b>	C42	Blue
<b>PART C4: SITE INFORMATION</b>		
<b>C4.1: LOCALITY PLAN.....</b>	C127	Green
<b>C4.2: EXAMPLE OF CONTRACT SIGNBOARD DETAILS .....</b>	C128	Green
<b>C4.3: TRAFFIC INFORMATION.....</b>	C129	Green
<b>C4.4: ANY OTHER RELEVANT TECHNICAL REPORTS .....</b>	C130.	Green
<b>ANNEXURE A: GUIDELINES FOR CONSTRUCTION AND MAINTENANCE PROJECTS DURING COVID-19 LOCKDOWN .....</b>		
	C131	White

## PART C1: AGREEMENTS AND CONTRACT DATA

### C1.1: FORM OF OFFER AND ACCEPTANCE

#### C1.1.1: OFFER

The Employer, identified in the Acceptance signature block, has solicited offers to enter into a contract in respect of the following works:

**CONTRACT NO. ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T SOURCING OF A TURNKEY CONTRACTOR (ENGINEER, PROCURE AND CONSTRUCT) FOR THE UPGRADE OF MAIN ROAD P258 FROM KM 13.367 TO KM 32.394, INCLUDING THE WIDENING OF MVUNYANE RIVER BRIDGE NO.3808 AT KM 18.781 AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF KWAMCHINSWANO CULVERT STC 4007 AT KM 17.363 IN THE ZULULAND DISTRICT UNDER EMPANGENI REGION**

The Tenderer, identified in the Offer signature block below, has examined the documents listed in the Tender Data and addenda thereto as listed in the Tender Schedules, and by submitting this Offer has accepted the Conditions of Tender.

By the representative of the Tenderer, deemed to be duly authorised, signing this part of this Form of Offer and Acceptance, the Tenderer offers to perform all of the obligations and liabilities of the Contractor under the Contract including compliance with all its terms and conditions according to their true intent and meaning for an amount to be determined in accordance with the Conditions of Contract identified in the Contract Data.

**The offered total of the prices inclusive of Value Added Tax is:**

Amount in Words.....  
.....  
.....  
R..... (in figures).

This Offer may be accepted by the Employer by signing the Acceptance part of this Form of Offer and Acceptance and returning one copy of this document to the Tenderer before the end of the period of validity stated in the Tender Data, whereupon the Tenderer becomes the party named as the Contractor in the Conditions of Contract identified in the Contract Data.

**Signature:** (of person authorised to sign the tender) .....

**Name:** (of signatory in capitals) .....

**Capacity:** (of signatory) .....

**Name of Tenderer:** (organisation) .....

**Address:** .....

**Telephone number:** ..... **E-mail:** .....

**Witness:**

**Signature:** .....

**Name:** (in capitals) .....

**Date:** .....

**[Failure of a Tenderer to sign this form will invalidate the tender]**

***This form is to be completed by the Employer only***

**C1.1.2: ACCEPTANCE**

By signing this part of the Form of Offer and Acceptance, the Employer, identified below, accepts the Tenderer's Offer. In consideration thereof, the Employer shall pay the Contractor the amount due in accordance with the Conditions of Contract identified in the Contract Data. Acceptance of the Tenderer's Offer shall form an agreement between the Employer and the Tenderer upon the terms and conditions contained in this Agreement and in the Contract, that is the subject of this Agreement.

The terms of the contract are contained in

- Part C1 Agreements and Contract Data (which includes this Agreement)
- Part C2 Pricing Data
- Part C3 Scope of Work
- Part C4 Site Information

and the schedules, forms, drawings and documents or parts thereof, which may be incorporated by reference into Parts C1 to C4 above.

Deviations from and amendments to the documents listed in the Tender Data and any addenda thereto listed in the Tender Schedules as well as any changes to the terms of the Offer agreed by the Tenderer and the Employer during this process of offer and acceptance, are contained in the Schedule of Deviations attached to and forming part of this Agreement. No amendments to or deviations from said documents are valid unless contained in this Schedule, which must be duly signed by the authorised representatives of both parties.

The Tenderer shall within two weeks after receiving a completed copy of this Agreement, including the Schedule of Deviations (if any), contact the Employer (whose details are given in the Contract Data) to arrange the delivery of any bonds, guarantees, proof of insurance and any other documentation to be provided in terms of the Conditions of Contract identified in the Contract Data at, or just after, the date this Agreement comes into effect. Failure to fulfil any of these obligations in accordance with those terms shall constitute a repudiation of this Agreement.

Notwithstanding anything contained herein, this Agreement comes into effect on the date when the Tenderer receives one fully completed original copy of this document, including the Schedule of Deviations (if any). Unless the Tenderer (now Contractor) within five days of the date of such receipt notifies the Employer in writing of any reason why he cannot accept the contents of this Agreement, this Agreement shall constitute a binding contract between the parties.

**Signature:** .....

**Name:** *(in capitals)* .....

**Capacity:** .....

**Name of Employer:** *(organisation)* .....

**Address:** .....

.....

**Witness: Signature:** ..... **Name:** *(in capitals)* .....

**Date:** .....

***This form is to be completed by the Employer and the successful tenderer only, upon acceptance of the successful tenderer’s offer***

**C1.1.3: SCHEDULE OF DEVIATIONS**

The extent of deviations from the tender documents issued by the Employer prior to the tender closing date is limited to those permitted in terms of the Tender Data and the Conditions of Tender.

A Tenderer’s covering letter shall not be included in the final contract document. Should any matter in such letter, which constitutes a deviation as aforesaid, become the subject of agreement reached during the process of offer and acceptance, the outcome of such agreement shall be recorded here.

Any other matter arising from the process of offer and acceptance either as a confirmation, clarification or change to the tender documents and which it is agreed by the Parties becomes an obligation of the contract shall also be recorded here.

Any change or addition to the tender documents arising from the above agreement and recorded here shall also be incorporated into the final draft of the Contract.

- 1**    **Subject:** .....

**Details:** .....

          .....
  
- 2**    **Subject:** .....

**Details:** .....

          .....
  
- 3**    **Subject:** .....

**Details:** .....

          .....
  
- 4**    **Subject:** .....

**Details:** .....

          .....
  
- 5**    **Subject:** .....

**Details:** .....

          .....

By the duly authorised representatives signing this Schedule of Deviations, the Employer and the Tenderer agree to and accept the foregoing Schedule of Deviations as the only deviations from and amendments to the documents listed in the Tender Data and addenda thereto as listed in the Tender Schedules, as well as

any confirmation, clarification or change to the terms of the offer agreed by the Tenderer and the Employer during this process of offer and acceptance.

It is expressly agreed that no other matter whether in writing, oral communication or implied during the period between the issue of the tender documents and the receipt by the Tenderer of a completed signed copy of this Agreement shall have any meaning or effect in the contract between the parties arising from this Agreement.

**FOR THE TENDERER:**

**Signature:** .....

**Name:** .....

**Capacity:** .....

**Tenderer:** *(Name and address of organisation)* .....

.....

**Witness:**

**Signature:** .....

**Name:** .....

**Date:** .....

**FOR THE EMPLOYER:**

**Signature:** .....

**Name:** .....

**Capacity:** .....

**Employer:** *(Name and address of organisation)* .....

.....

**Witness:**

**Signature:** .....

**Name:** .....

**Date:** .....

## **C1.2: CONTRACT DATA**

### **C1.2.1: CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT**

#### **C1.2.1.1 GENERAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT**

This Contract will be based on the 'FIDIC Silver Book – A companion to the 2017 EPC/Turnkey Contract', issued by the Institution of Civil Engineers (ICE) (abbreviated title: 'FIDIC SILVER BOOK 2017').

It is agreed that the only variations from the FIDIC SILVER BOOK 2017 are those set out hereafter under "C1.2.1.2 SPECIAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT".

#### **C1.2.1.2 SPECIAL CONDITIONS OF CONTRACT**

##### **C1.2.1.2.1 GENERAL**

These Special Conditions of Contract (SCC) form an integral part of the Contract. The Special Conditions of Contract shall amplify, modify or supersede, as the case may be, the FIDIC SILVER BOOK 2017 to the extent specified below, and shall take precedence and shall govern.

The clauses of the Special Conditions of Contract hereafter are numbered "SCC" followed in each case by the number of the applicable clause or subclause in the FIDIC SILVER BOOK 2017, and the applicable heading, or (where a new special condition that has no relation to the existing clauses is introduced) by a number that follows after the last clause number in the FIDIC SILVER BOOK 2017, and an appropriate heading.

The bidder is to ensure that they assist the employer in complying with the IDPM Policy which is aligned to the FIDPM Framework.

##### **C1.2.1.2.2 AMENDMENTS TO THE FIDIC SILVER BOOK 2017**

###### **SCC 1.1 Definitions**

*Add the following to the end of Clause 1.1:*

"SCC 1.1.81 "Targeted Enterprise" means an enterprise as defined in Part G: Small Contractor Development of section C3.3 Particular Specifications in Part C3: Scope of Work."

###### **SCC 4.1 Contractor's General obligations**

*Add the following new paragraphs to the end of Clause 4.1*

"If the Contractor fails to achieve the monetary value of the contract participation goal stated in the Contract Data for local labour content in terms of Part F: Expanded Public Works Programme of section C3.3 Particular Specifications in Part C3: Scope of Work, the Contractor shall be liable to the Employer for a sum calculated in accordance with the Contract Data and the aforementioned Scope of Work as a penalty for such underachievement.

If the Contractor fails to achieve the monetary value of the contract participation goal stated in the Contract Data for contract participation by Targeted Enterprises in terms of Part G: Small Contractor Development of section C3.3 Particular Specifications in Part C3: Scope of Work, the Contractor shall be liable to the Employer for a sum calculated in accordance with the Contract Data and the aforementioned Scope of Work as a penalty for such underachievement."



**SCC 6.2 Rates of wages and Conditions of Labour**

*Add the following to Clause 6.2:*

“The contractor shall pay rates and wages, and observe conditions of labour, which are not lower than those established for the trade or industry where the work is carried out, as stated in the Contract Data.”

**SCC 10.1 Taking Over the Works and Sections**

*Add the following to Clause 10.1:*

“The use of any completed roadway or parts of the Works, whether for unhindered use by the public or for accommodation of traffic, while other parts are being constructed, shall not constitute occupation of the Works by the Employer.”

**SCC 6.2.2 Contractor failing to provide security**

If the Contractor fails to provide the required fixed performance guarantee within the time period stated in the Contract Data, or if the performance guarantee shall differ substantially from the pro forma, it shall legally be deemed that the Contractor has selected a security of ten per cent retention of the value of the Works without limiting the Employer’s right to terminate the Contract in terms of Clause 15.”

## C1.2.2: DATA PROVIDED BY THE EMPLOYER

The following contract specific data are applicable to this contract.

CLAUSE	CONTRACT SPECIFIC DATA PROVIDED BY THE EMPLOYER				
<p><b>1.</b></p> <p>1.1.24</p> <p>1.1.21</p> <p>1.1.10</p> <p>1.1.27</p>	<p><b>GENERAL</b></p> <p>The Defects Notification Period (DNP) is 12 months. Design life is based on the Road Class of the Road.</p> <p>The time for achieving design approval is 12 months the maximum construction period is 60 months. Total project duration is 72 months.</p> <p>Pricing Strategy: The Contract is to be a FIXED PRICE Contract.</p> <p><b>Name of Employer:</b> Province of KwaZulu-Natal represented by Head of Department: Department of Transport</p> <p><b>Address of Employer:</b></p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td><u>Physical:</u></td> <td><u>Postal:</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td>172 Burger Street Pietermaritzburg 3201</td> <td>Private Bag X9043 Pietermaritzburg 3200</td> </tr> </table> <p>E-mail: <a href="mailto:Anela.Soshebe@kzntransport.gov.za">Anela.Soshebe@kzntransport.gov.za</a></p> <p>Telephone No: 033 355 0552 Fax No: 033 355 8049</p>	<u>Physical:</u>	<u>Postal:</u>	172 Burger Street Pietermaritzburg 3201	Private Bag X9043 Pietermaritzburg 3200
<u>Physical:</u>	<u>Postal:</u>				
172 Burger Street Pietermaritzburg 3201	Private Bag X9043 Pietermaritzburg 3200				
<p><b>3.</b></p> <p>3.1</p>	<p><b>THE EMPLOYER'S ADMINISTRATION</b></p> <p>N/A</p>				
<p><b>4.</b></p> <p>SCC 4.1.1</p>	<p><b>CONTRACTOR'S GENERAL OBLIGATIONS</b></p> <p>The contract participation goal for local labour content is to be calculated as specified in the Tender section of this document. The target labour content is 6% of the total construction value.</p> <p>The penalty for failing to achieve the monetary value of the above target set by the Employer for local labour content in terms of Part F: Expanded Public Works Programme of section C3.3 Particular Specifications in Part C3: Scope of Work, is 5% of the monetary value by which the achieved monetary value falls short of the target monetary value.</p> <p>The contract participation goal for Targeted Enterprises is <b>30%</b> for construction and engineering works.</p> <p>The successful tenderer must subcontract a minimum of 30% of the value of the Constructions Works and Engineering Works to Targeted Enterprises through Contract Participation Goals (CPG) for a bidder that is BEE Level 1 EME or QSE that is more than 51% owned by black person(s) in terms of the requirements of the CIDB B.U.I.L.D Programme with respect to Indirect Targeting for Enterprise Development.</p>				

CLAUSE	CONTRACT SPECIFIC DATA PROVIDED BY THE EMPLOYER
<p>SCC 4.10.1</p>	<p>The bidder may not subcontract more than 25% of the value of the contract to any other enterprise that does not have an equal or higher B-BBEE status level of contributor than the Contractor, unless the contract is subcontracted to an EME that has the capability and ability to execute the subcontract.</p> <p>The Contractor and his subcontractors shall be registered with the Bargaining Council for the Civil Engineering Industry and comply with the wage rates and conditions of labour agreed by the Bargaining Council for the Civil Engineering Industry, except where a specific industry publishes its own wage rates and conditions of labour.</p> <p>The wage rates and conditions of labour employed under the Expanded Public Works Programme, shall comply with the Ministerial Determination 4, issued in terms of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997 by the Minister of Labour in Government Notice No. R347 of 4 May 2012.</p> <p>The Standard for Skills Development is set at a maximum development support of 0.25% of the project's contract value as per the CIDB B.U.I.L.D Programme.</p> <p>The successful tenderer must employ Learners from TVET colleges and universities by providing them with opportunities for workplace learning through placements, thereby acquiring work experience and young professionals seeking candidacy and registration through work placements.</p> <p>The wage rates and the implementation shall be as per the Standard for Developing Skills through Infrastructure Contracts, Published in the Government Gazette No. 43495 of 3 July 2020, issued in terms of sections 5(2) of the Construction Industry Development Board Act, 2000(Act no. 38 of 2000).</p> <p>The penalty for failing to achieve the monetary value of the above target set by the Employer for contract participation by Targeted Enterprises in terms of Part G: Small Contractor Development of section C3.3 Particular Specifications in Part C3: Scope of Work, is 5% of the monetary value by which the achieved monetary value falls short of the target monetary value</p>
<p><b>8.</b> SCC 8.1</p>	<p><b>TIME AND RELATED MATTERS</b></p> <p>The date of commencement of the project shall be within 28 days after the issuing of the order.</p> <p>The following documentation shall be submitted within 14 days after commencement date:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The performance security of 8% of the first One Million Rand plus 3,5% of the balance of the Contract Sum;</li> <li>• Initial Programme.</li> </ul> <p>The following documentation shall be submitted within <u>14 days</u> after closing of FIDPM Gate 4 by service provider and before the commencement date of construction:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) Health and Safety;</li> <li>(ii) Form C1.4 'Agreement in terms of Section 37(2) of the Occupational Health and Safety Act No. 85 of 1993' to be signed by the Contractor and the Employer;</li> <li>(iii) Proof of registration and good standing with the compensation fund or with a licensed compensation insurer as contemplated in the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act No. 130 of 1993).</li> </ol>

CLAUSE	CONTRACT SPECIFIC DATA PROVIDED BY THE EMPLOYER
	<p>and if the Employer is required to apply for a construction work permit to perform construction work in terms of regulation 3(1) of the Construction Regulations 2014, the following documentation shall also be submitted:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(iv) Temporary works designer's appointment duties in terms of Regulation 6(2) as have been agreed upon plus proof of registration with ECSA [CR 3(5)(b)(iii) read with CR 5(1)(e) and CR 6(2)];</li> <li>(v) Evidence that the Principal contractor has made adequate provision for the cost of Health and Safety, i.e., bill of quantities [CR 3(5)(b)(iii) read with CR 5(1)(g)]; and</li> <li>(vi) Evidence that the Principal contractor has the necessary competencies to carry out construction work safely, namely, schedule of activities, relevant appointments and proofs of competency [CR 5(1)(h)].</li> </ul> <p>The non-working days are Sundays.</p> <p>The special non-working days are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) the statutory public holidays in terms of the Public Holidays Act;</li> <li>(ii) the foreseeable election days declared as a statutory public holiday; and</li> <li>(iii) the annual year-end shutdown period as recommended by the Bargaining Council for the Civil Engineering Industry.</li> </ul> <p>The penalty for failing to complete the Works is 0,05% of the Contract Sum per day, up to a maximum limit of twenty-five thousand rand per day (R25 000,00 per day).</p> <p>The requirements for achieving Practical Completion are as stated in COTO Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Works for State Road Authorities and clause 11.1 of FIDIC Silver Book.</p> <p>The bidder shall submit the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(i) evidence that the local labour has been paid, and that the Targeted Enterprise subcontractors have received all amounts due in terms of their respective subcontract agreements; and</li> <li>(ii) the survey and materials information which the Employer requires to complete the as-built drawings and records.</li> <li>(iii) Design, documentation and specialist studies work carried out during the duration of the project.</li> </ul> <p>The latent defects period is 10 years.</p>
<p><b>14.2</b> SCC 14.2</p>	<p>Advance payment will not be applicable</p>
<p><b>14.9</b> SCC 14.9</p>	<p>The percentage retention on the amount due to the contractor is 10%.</p> <p>The limit of the retention money is 5% of the first one million rand plus 1.6% of the balance of the contract sum excluding contingencies, contract price adjustment and VAT.</p>

CLAUSE	CONTRACT SPECIFIC DATA PROVIDED BY THE EMPLOYER
<p><b>19.</b> SCC 19.2</p>	<p><b>INSURANCES</b></p> <p>All insurances, sureties and professional indemnities to be provided by the bidder.</p> <p>The limit of indemnity for liability insurance is <u>R10 000 000,00 (ten million Rand only)</u> for any single liability claim. Liability insurance shall include spread of fire risk.</p>
<p><b>21</b> SCC 21.1</p>	<p><b>DISPUTES AND ABITRATION</b></p> <p>Disputes Adjudication or Avoidance Board (DAAB) should be appointed within 28 days after the commencement date and it should consist of one or three members.</p>
	<p><b>DATA WITH REFERENCE TO C3.3 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS</b></p>
<p><b>PART G</b> G2.9</p>	<p><b>SMALL CONTRACTOR DEVELOPMENT</b></p> <p>The target area for local labour is Abaqulusi local municipality under Zululand District DC26,Empangeni Region and Nquthu Local Municipality, under uMzinyathi District(DC24), Ladysmith Region.</p>

**C1.2.3: DATA PROVIDED BY THE BIDDER**

The following contract specific data are applicable to this contract.

CLAUSE	CONTRACT SPECIFIC DATA PROVIDED BY THE BIDDER										
<p><b>1.</b></p> <p>1.1.11</p>	<p><b>GENERAL</b></p> <p><b>Name of Bidder:</b> .....</p> <p>.....</p> <p><b>Address of Bidder</b></p> <table border="0"> <tr> <td style="text-align: center;"><u>Physical:</u></td> <td style="text-align: center;"><u>Postal:</u></td> </tr> <tr> <td>.....</td> <td>.....</td> </tr> <tr> <td>.....</td> <td>.....</td> </tr> <tr> <td>.....</td> <td>.....</td> </tr> <tr> <td>.....</td> <td>.....</td> </tr> </table>	<u>Physical:</u>	<u>Postal:</u>	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
<u>Physical:</u>	<u>Postal:</u>										
.....	.....										
.....	.....										
.....	.....										
.....	.....										
	<p>Signed on behalf of Tenderer: .....</p>										

## **C1.3: INSURANCE**

**PRO FORMA**

**TBA**

As per FIDIC Silver Book 2017.

**C1.4: AGREEMENT IN TERMS OF SECTION 37(2) OF THE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT NO. 85 OF 1993**

THIS AGREEMENT is made between The Province of KwaZulu-Natal represented by Head of Department: Department of Transport (hereinafter called the EMPLOYER) of the one part, herein represented by:

.....

in his capacity as: .....

AND: .....

(hereinafter called the CONTRACTOR) of the other part, herein represented by:.....

.....

in his capacity as: .....

duly authorised to sign on behalf of the Contractor.

**WHEREAS** the CONTRACTOR is the Mandatary of the EMPLOYER in consequence of an agreement between the CONTRACTOR and the EMPLOYER in respect of:

**CONTRACT NO. ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T:SOURCING OF A TURNKEY CONTRACTOR (ENGINEER, PROCURE AND CONSTRUCT) FOR THE UPGRADE OF MAIN ROAD 258 FROM KM 13.367 TO KM 32.394 ,INCLUDING THE WIDENING OF MVUNYANE RIVER BRIDGE NO.3808 AT KM 18.781 AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF KWAMCHINSWANO CULVERT STC 4007 AT KM 17.363 IN THE ZULULAND DISTRICT UNDER THE EMPANGENI REGION**

for the construction, completion and maintenance of the works;

**AND WHEREAS** the EMPLOYER and the CONTRACTOR have agreed to enter into an agreement in terms of the provisions of Section 37(2) of the Occupational Health and Safety Act No 85 of 1993, as amended by the Occupational Health and Safety Amendment Act No 181 of 1993 (hereinafter referred to as the ACT);

**NOW THEREFORE** the parties agree as follows:

1. The CONTRACTOR undertakes to acquaint the appropriate officials and employees of the CONTRACTOR with all relevant provisions of the ACT and the regulations promulgated in terms thereof.
2. The CONTRACTOR undertakes to fully comply with all relevant duties, obligations and prohibitions imposed in terms of the ACT and Regulations: Provided that should the EMPLOYER have prescribed certain arrangements and procedures that same shall be observed and adhered to by the CONTRACTOR, his officials and employees. The CONTRACTOR shall bear the onus of acquainting himself/herself/itself with such arrangements and procedures.
3. The CONTRACTOR hereby accepts sole liability for such due compliance with the relevant duties, obligations, prohibitions, arrangements and procedures, if any, imposed by the ACT and Regulations, and the CONTRACTOR expressly absolves the EMPLOYER from being obliged to comply with any of the aforesaid duties, obligations, prohibitions, arrangements and procedures in respect of the work included in the contract.
4. The CONTRACTOR agrees that any duly authorised officials of the EMPLOYER shall be entitled, although not obliged, to take such steps as may be necessary to ensure that the CONTRACTOR has complied with his undertakings as more fully set out in paragraphs 1 and 2 above, which steps may include, but shall not be limited to, the right to inspect any appropriate site or premises occupied by the CONTRACTOR, or to take such steps the EMPLOYER may deem necessary to remedy the default of the CONTRACTOR at the cost of the CONTRACTOR.



5. The CONTRACTOR shall be obliged to report forthwith to the EMPLOYER any investigation, complaint or criminal charge which may arise as a consequence of the provisions of the ACT and Regulations, pursuant to work performed in terms of this agreement, and shall, on written demand, provide full details in writing of such investigation, complaint or criminal charge.

Thus signed at ..... for and on behalf of the **EMPLOYER**

on this the ..... day of ..... 20.....

SIGNATURE: .....

NAME AND SURNAME: .....

CAPACITY: .....

**WITNESSES:** 1. ....

2. ....

Thus signed at ..... for and on behalf of the **CONTRACTOR**

on this the ..... day of ..... 20.....

SIGNATURE: .....

NAME AND SURNAME: .....

CAPACITY: .....

**WITNESSES:** 1. ....

2. ....

## C1.5: RETENTION MONEY GUARANTEE

### PRO FORMA

#### RETENTION MONEY GUARANTEE

THE HEAD: TRANSPORT  
PROVINCE OF KWAZULU-NATAL  
PRIVATE BAG X9043  
PIETERMARITZBURG  
3200

CONTRACT NO. \_\_\_\_\_ FOR \_\_\_\_\_

**ISSUED TO:** the **PROVINCE OF KWAZULU-NATAL**, represented by **HEAD: TRANSPORT** (hereinafter referred to as "the Employer")

**ON BEHALF OF:** ..... (hereinafter referred to as "the Contractor")

In connection with

**CONTRACT NO. ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T** ..... (hereinafter referred to as "the Contract")

WHEREAS the Employer and the Contractor have agreed that the Contractor may provide a guarantee in lieu of the whole or portion of the retention monies provided for under the Contract;

NOW THEREFORE we, the undersigned, undertake, in accordance with the following provisions, to pay the Employer such amounts as the Employer may, from time to time, demand from us.

1. Each demand by the Employer shall be in writing signed by the Employer and delivered to us at

.....  
or such other address as we shall in writing notify to the Employer and shall be accompanied by a certificate complying with Clause 2, signed by the Employer as such in terms of the Contract.

2. The Employer's certificate referred to in Clause 1 shall certify

- (a) that he is the Employer in terms of the Contract,
- (b) that the Contractor is in breach of his obligations under the Contract, and
- (c) that the amount demanded, which amount the certificate shall specify,

- (i) does not exceed the amount of retention monies which, but for this guarantee, would have been retained by the Employer in terms of the Contract at the date of the certificate, less the aggregate of the amounts of retention money actually retained by the Employer and the amounts previously paid by us to the Employer in terms hereof, and

- (ii) does not exceed a genuine estimate of the cost to the Employer of having the breach referred to in paragraph (b) remedied less the aggregate of any amounts withheld by the Employer from payments due the Contractor in terms of the Contract by reason of the breach referred to, and any amount in retention money actually held by the Employer save to the extent that the same had been deducted from any previous demand in terms hereof.

3. We shall within 28 days after our receipt of a demand complying with the provisions of Clauses 1 and 2 make payment to the Employer of the amount demanded at 172 Burger Street, Pietermaritzburg or at such other address as the Employer shall in writing notify us.

4. Subject to compliance with the provisions thereof, our liability to make the payments herein referred to shall be unconditional and shall not be affected nor diminished by any disputes, claims or counterclaims between the Employer and the Contractor.

5. Our aggregate liability under this guarantee is limited to R .....
6. This guarantee shall expire on the date on which the last of the retention monies, which but for this guarantee would have been retained by the Employer, becomes payable to the Contractor.
7. This guarantee is not transferable and must be produced for endorsement if any part payment is made and must be returned to us against final payment of our aggregate liability or on the date of the expiry of the guarantee in terms of Clause 6, whichever is the earlier.

Signed in the presence of the witnesses named hereunder:

At ..... for and on behalf of .....

on this ..... day of .....

Signature: .....

Capacity: .....

Address: .....

As Witnesses:

1. .... Name in Block Letters .....

2. .... Name in Block Letters .....

### C1.6: TRANSFER OF RIGHTS

#### TRANSFER OF RIGHTS AND INDEMNITY

(To be completed during construction by successful Tenderer only)

Claim for Plant and materials on site, Payment Certificate No. .... Date: .....

Contract No: ..... For (contract title) .....

I, the undersigned (name of signatory) ..... in my capacity as  
..... of (name of Contractor) .....

duly authorised hereto on behalf of the Contractor hereby transfer, cede and assign all the Contractor's rights, title and interest in and to the Plant and materials, for which evidence of bona fide ownership is attached hereto, unto and in favour of (name of Employer) .....

Insofar as the Contractor retains actual control of the materials and goods, the right of ownership thereof passes to the Employer by *constitutum possessorium*.

I herewith indemnify the Employer against any claim to and in respect of the said Plant and materials by reason of the Contractor's sequestration or liquidation or of any defect in the Contractor's title to the materials and agree that no payment for materials on site will be made by the Employer until such time as I have submitted documentary proof of bona fide ownership of the said Plant and materials.

This transfer shall become effective upon conclusion of the Contractor receiving payment from the Employer or from any other person on behalf of the Employer for the Plant and materials as Plant and materials on Site, payment of retention money thereon excluded.

I further confirm that I am fully responsible for all Plant and materials listed under this Transfer of Rights and that they have been insured adequately against all risks and will remain insured until they are built into or used in the permanent works and taken over by the Employer.

**This certificate of Transfer of Rights applies only to the Plant and materials as listed in the following table.**

DESCRIPTION OF ITEM	UNIT	QUANTITY	RATE	AMOUNT	SUPPLIER
TOTAL VALUE OF PLANT AND MATERIALS					

Signed by: ..... Date: .....  
for and on behalf of the Contractor.

Witnessed by: .....

## PART C2: PRICING DATA

### C2.1 PRICING ASSUMPTIONS

#### 1. GENERAL

The Bill of Quantities forms part of the Contract Documents and must be read and priced in conjunction with all the other documents comprising the Contract Documents, which include the Conditions of Tender and Conditions of Contract. This contract is a fixed price contract and is inclusive of assessments, design works, procurement, implementation close out and hand over.

The contractor must plan the work in this contract as a set of activities. The activities should be the same activities as indicated in the programme.

The activities are to be described and indicated in Part C2.2 and a lump sum fixed price for each activity is to be entered in the Price Column.

The contractor shall determine the contract skills participation goals, expressed in Rand, which shall not be less than the **SUB-TOTAL 1** multiplied by a percentage factor given in Table 2 in the Standard for the applicable class of construction works. For this contract, the percentage shall be 0.25%. This is indicated by the percentage factor in the Final Tender Summary section. **Minimum Contract Skills Development Goal (CSDG) sum = Civil Engineering CE (0.25%) x SUB – TOTAL 1** of the tender amount.

#### 2. DESCRIPTION OF ITEMS

The contractor is to include in the Prices in the price list the costs and profit associated with the following items as no separate payment will be made for such items:

- Soil testing, test pits and all other testing required for acceptance control as per the standards.
- Engineering fees and costs
- Excavation of all boulders
- Blasting and the removal and importation of material associated with blasting work
- Local authority charges
- Geotech tests
- EIA
- Hydrological report (If needed)
- All additional requirements as described in Part 3.1: Scope of Works

The contractor shall be responsible for and pay all costs associated with the development of the design, detail design and production of “as-built” designs for the following:

- Civil Engineering work
- Rezoning
- Temporary and permanent connections to municipal water, electricity and storm water reticulation.

### 3. PRELIMINARIES AND ACTIVITIES IN THE BILL OF QUANTITIES

The amount or the items of the Preliminaries shall be adjusted to take account of the theoretical financial effect which changes in time or value (or both) have on this section. Such adjustments shall be based on adjustments in the following categories and recorded in the Bill of Quantities.

- a) An amount which is not be varied, namely Fixed
- b) An amount which is to be varied in proportion to the construction period as completed to the initial construction period excluding revisions to the construction period for which the contractor is not entitled to adjustment in terms of the contract, namely Time Related.

Where no provision is made in the Bill of Quantities to indicate which of the two categories above apply or where no selection is made, the adjustments shall be based on the following breakdown:

- a) 25 percent is Fixed;
- b) 75 percent is Time Related

The adjustment of the Preliminaries shall apply notwithstanding the actual employment of resources in the execution of the works. The contract value used for the adjustment of the preliminaries shall exclude any contingency sum, the amount for the preliminaries and any amount in respect of the contract price adjustment provided for in the contract. Adjustments in respect of any staged or sectional completion shall be prorated to the value of each section.

### 5. PRICING OF THE BILL OF QUANTITIES

There are Five schedules to be priced in the bill of quantities. These sections are inclusive of all works, which should be priced as a lump sum, and will allow for the completion of the project from initial assessments to hand over. The schedules are as follows:

- a) Schedule A: Preliminaries
- b) Schedule B: Engineering and Design Works
- c) Schedule C: Construction and Close Out
- d) Schedule F: Expanded Public Works Programme
- e) Schedule G: Small Contractor Development (CPG)

All amounts priced for per activity exclude VAT. 10% Contingencies have been allowed for which will require client approval before monies are utilized in conjunction with the terms of the contract.

### 6. CORRECTION OF ENTRIES

Incorrect entries shall not be erased or obliterated with correction fluid but must be crossed out neatly. The correct figures must be entered above or adjacent to the deleted entry, and the alteration must be initialled by the Tenderer.

### 7. INTERIM PAYMENTS

Interim payments will be made in accordance with the contract and based on the contractor completing activities and achieving milestones as set out in Part C2.2. For the construction part of the project, a BOQ must be submitted by the entity/bidder, and approved by the employer, to facilitate interim monthly payments during construction. This must include monies allowed for supervision as well. The total cost of this BOQ should represent the value under Activity C1 within the pricing schedule (schedule C: construction works and close out) of the contract section of the document.

## C2.2 BILL OF QUANTITIES (ACTIVITY SCHEDULE)

<u>TABLE OF CONTENTS</u>	Page
BILL OF QUANTITIES .....	C23
TENDER SUMMARY.....	C25

**PROVINCE OF KWAZULU-NATAL  
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT**

**CONTRACT NO. ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T: SOURCING OF A TURNKEY CONTRACTOR (ENGINEER, PROCURE AND CONSTRUCT) FOR THE UPGRADE OF MAIN ROAD 258 FROM KM 13.367 TO KM 32.394 ,INCLUDING THE WIDENING OF MVUNYANE RIVER BRIDGE NO.3808 AT KM 18.781 AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF KWAMCHINSWANO CULVERT STC 4007 AT KM 17.363 IN THE ZULULAND DISTRICT UNDER THE EMPANGENI REGION**

**SCHEDULE A: PRELIMINARIES**

The department will fully remunerate the consortium after the completion of each stage as per our National Framework for Infrastructure Procurement and Delivery Management (FIDPM policy). Therefore, it is the responsibility of the Consortium to ensure that each stage as listed on SCHEDULE B and SCHEDULE C below is approved before moving to the next stage.

<b>SECTION</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>AMOUNT</b>
A1	TIME RELATED	R
A2	FIXED	R
	<b>TOTAL CARRIED FORWARD TO TENDER SUMMARY</b>	<b>R</b>

**SCHEDULE B: ENGINEERING AND DESIGN WORKS**

<b>SECTION</b>	<b>DESCRIPTION</b>	<b>AMOUNT</b>
B1	CONDUCT ASSESMENTS (EXPROPRIATION, IDENTIFICATION OF SERVICES, SURVEYS, ANALYSIS OF SITE AND TESTS AND SITE INVESTIGATIONS REQUIRED FOR DESIGN)	R
	PROVISIONAL SUM FOR APPOINTMENT OF DAAB	R 1 000 000.00
B2	PREPARE INITIAL CONCEPT DESIGN AND RELEVANT DOCUMENTATION. ESTABLISH ANY FURTHER SURVEYS, TESTS AND/OR INVESTIGATIONS.	R
B3	PREPARE DETAILED DESIGNS AND DRAWINGS (WHERE REQUIRED)	R
B4	PREPARE WORKING DRAWINGS, METHOD STATEMENTS AND PROCUREMENT DOCUMENTS FOR CPG CONTRACTORS	R
	PROVISIONAL SUM FOR DISPUTE AND ARBITRATION	R 3 000 000.00
	<b>TOTAL CARRIED FORWARD TO TENDER SUMMARY</b>	<b>R</b>



**SCHEDULE C: CONSTRUCTION WORKS AND CLOSE OUT**

SECTION	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT
C1	IMPLEMENT THE UPGRADE OF MAIN ROAD 258 FROM KM 13.367 TO KM 32.394, INCLUDING THE WIDENING OF MVUNYANE RIVER BRIDGE NO.3808 AT KM 18.781 AND THE CONSTRUCTION OF KWAMCHINSWANO CULVERT STC 4007 AT KM 17.363, INCLUSIVE OF ALL ACCEPTANCE TESTS (SUPPLY OF MATERIALS AND CONSTRUCTION)	R
C2	CLOSE OUT (MATERIAL AND DRAWING AS-BUILTS, HANDOVER DOCUMENTATION TO CLIENT AND PREPARE FINAL ACCOUNTS FOR PROJECT)	R
	<b>TOTAL CARRIED FORWARD TO TENDER SUMMARY</b>	R

**SCHEDULE F: EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME (EPWP)**

SECTION	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT
F1	EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME The calculation on calculating the minimum % of labour is found in the tender section of this document. This can be achieved during the design stage and or during the construction stage.	R
	PROVISIONAL SUM FOR NYS & EPWP PROGRAMME	R 21 000 000.00
	<b>TOTAL CARRIED FORWARD TO TENDER SUMMARY</b>	R

**SCHEDULE G: SMALL CONTRACTOR DEVELOPMENT (CPG)**

SECTION	DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT
G1	SMALL CONTRACTOR DEVELOPMENT The minimum of 30% should be achieved in the project. This can be achieved during the design stage and or during the construction stage.	R
	<b>TOTAL CARRIED FORWARD TO TENDER SUMMARY</b>	R

**PROVINCE OF KWAZULU-NATAL  
DEPARTMENT OF TRANSPORT**

**CONTRACT NO. ZNB02219/00000/00/HOD/INF/23/T**

**TENDER SUMMARY**

DESCRIPTION	AMOUNT
Totals of Bill of Quantities brought forward:	
Schedule A: Preliminaries (b/f from page C23)	R
Schedule B: Engineering and Design Works (b/f from page C23)	R
Schedule C: Construction and close out (b/f from page C24)	R
Schedule F: Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) (b/f from page C24)	R
Schedule G: Small Contractor Development (CPG) (b/f from page C24)	R
<b>SUBTOTAL 1</b>	R
<b><u>Add:</u> Contingencies (10% of SUBTOTAL 1)</b>	R
<b>SUBTOTAL 2</b>	R
<b><u>Add:</u> VAT (15% of SUBTOTAL 2)</b>	R
<b>TOTAL CARRIED FORWARD TO FORM OF OFFER C1.1.1</b>	R

Signed on behalf of the Tenderer: ..... (Signature)

Date: .....

Tenderer's Name: ..... (Company Name)

## **PART C3: SCOPE OF WORK**

<b><u>TABLE OF CONTENTS</u></b>	<b>PAGE</b>
<b>C3.1 STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS</b> .....	C27
<b>C3.2 PROJECT SPECIFICATIONS</b> .....	C27
<b>PART A: GENERAL</b>	
1. DESCRIPTION OF THE WORKS .....	C28
2. ENGINEERING .....	C33
3. PROCUREMENT .....	C33
4. CONSTRUCTION .....	C34
5. MANAGEMENT .....	C34
<b>PART B: DETAILED SPECIFICATIONS PER ACTIVITY</b>	
SCHEDULE A: PRELIMINARIES .....	C35
SCHEDULE B: ENGINEERING AND DESIGN WORKS .....	C35
SCHEDULE C: CONSTRUCTION AND CLOSE OUT .....	C36
SCHEDULE F: EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME (EPWP) .....	C36
SCHEDULE G: SMALL CONTRACTOR DEVELOPMENT (CPG) .....	C36
<b>C3.3 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS</b>	
<b>PART C: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT SPECIFICATION</b> .....	C42
<b>PART E: OHSA 1993 HEALTH AND SAFETY SPECIFICATION</b> .....	C47
<b>PART F: EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME</b> .....	C55
<b>PART G: SMALL CONTRACTOR DEVELOPMENT</b> .....	C90
<b>PART H: CIDB CONTRACT SKILLS DEVELOPMENT GOAL (CSDG)</b> .....	C108

### **C3.1: STANDARD SPECIFICATIONS**

The Standard Specifications on which this contract is based varies per activity.

### **C3.2: PROJECT SPECIFICATIONS**

The Project Specifications, consisting of two parts, form an integral part of the Contract and supplement the Standard Specifications.

Part A contains a general description of the Works, the Site and the requirements to be met.

Part B contains variations, amendments and additions to the Standard Specifications and, if applicable, the Particular Specifications.

In the event of any discrepancy between a part or parts of the Standard or Particular Specifications and the Project Specifications, the Project Specifications shall take precedence. In the event of a discrepancy between the Specifications (including the Project Specifications) and the drawings and / or the Bill of Quantities, the discrepancy shall be resolved by the Employer before the execution of the work under the relevant item.

The Standard Specifications, which form part of this contract, have been written to cover all phases of work normally required for road contracts, and they may therefore cover items not applicable to this particular contract.

## **C3.2: PROJECT SPECIFICATIONS**

### **PART A: GENERAL**

#### **1. DESCRIPTION OF THE WORKS**

##### **1.1 Employer's objectives**

This Project forms part of the Province of KwaZulu-Natal Department of Transport's Construction Programme. This Contract involves the upgrading of main of P258 from eMondlo area to Thelezini area . This section of main road P258 commences at KM 13.367 and ends at KM 32.394.

The contract is located in a region of KwaZulu-Natal that has been historically impoverished by a lack of infrastructure access. It is therefore mandatory that the Contractor shall interact with the community via proactive project liaison committee, the community liaison officer and project participation by its leaders, constituted organisations and forums, as well as through the employment of its people. These activities shall constitute essential facets of the project.

The Employer's objectives in delivering public infrastructure and services for this project include the provision of temporary work opportunities to the local community through the application of labour-enhanced methods to the maximum extent feasible, in accordance with the Expanded Public Works Programme Guidelines.

The Contractor shall be required to attend meetings of the local Project Liaison Committee (PLC) from time to time. The requirements of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) are contained in Part F of section C3.3 Particular Specifications. These EPWP requirements also include provisions for the National Youth Service programme where applicable. The requirements in terms of Government's initiatives for broad-based black economic empowerment with respect to small contractor development are contained in Part G of section C3.3 Particular Specifications.

##### **1.2 Location of the Works**

The Works are located within the Empangeni Region, under the Zululand District Municipality (DC26), Abaqulusi Local Municipality (KZN263) and other portion within Ladysmith Region, under the uMzinyathi District(DC24), Nquthu Local Municipality (KZN242). Section C4 has a locality map for further precise details of the location.

##### **1.3 Overview of the Works**

The upgrade will include earthworks, layers works, surfacing, drainage structures (Major and Minor) as well as the widening of Mvunyane River Bridge No.3808 at km 18.781 and the construction of KwaMchinswano Culvert STC 4007 at km 17.363. Minimum 30% of the works must be subcontracted to local emerging businesses and contractors. All designs/drawings and method statement to be approved before commencement of works. Works to comply with the COTO standard. Any change of scope/works/designs require prior approval from the client before commencement. No variation of tendered amounts will be accepted on the basis of design variations emanating from design approval comments made by this department.

#### 1.4 Extent of the Works

The Works to be carried out must include but not limited to the following main activities:

- (a) Initial site assessments, including but not limited to, expropriation documentation, identification of services and site and test investigations required for design.
- (b) Preparation of initial concept design with relevant documentation
- (c) Initial surveys
- (d) EIA
- (e) Survey Manual to be used and prior approval by department in accordance with TMH11
- (f) Hydrological studies
- (g) Compliance with FIPDM is emphasized
- (h) Stake holder engagement
- (i) Application for construction work permit by registered personnel
- (j) Detailed design and drawings for design approval showing bus bays (where required), sidewalks (where required), road cross-section, road longitudinal section with drainage and super-elevation as per departmental standards, road layout plan, drainage, road signs, earthworks, layerworks, surfacing and services
- (k) Prepare working drawings and method statements for construction.
- (l) Prepare procurement documents for required service providers and sub-contractors
- (m) Establishment on site and clearing and grubbing.
- (n) Provision of traffic accommodation facilities.
- (o) Survey requirements.
- (p) Construction of Major and Minor structures as identified in the detailed design to comply with FIPDM.
- (q) Construction of all pavement layers to the top of the base layer, including priming to protect the base layer.
- (r) Construction of the surfacing layer
- (s) Road prism drainage.
- (t) Construction of erosion protection measures (gabions, stone pitching, etc.)
- (u) Installation of guardrails.
- (v) Finishing and cleaning up of the road and road reserve.
- (w) Installation of all road studs, road signs and road markings
- (x) Continuous quality control over materials and workmanship, and compliance with the Particular Specifications with regard to environmental management and occupational health and safety, during all the above construction activities.
- (y) Removal of all site establishment facilities and constructional plant on completion of the Works. Removal to be compliant with the EIA and/or the Environmental Acts surrounding the project.
- (z) Making good of any defects during the Defects Liability Period.
- (aa) Provide a maintenance plan for completed road infrastructure.
- (bb) Compiling the close out reports together with material and drawing as-built.
- (cc) Hand over to the client with the necessary training if required.
- (dd) Compliance with FIDPM Requirements

#### 1.5 Description of the Works

The following description is a broad outline of the works and does not limit the work to be executed by the Bidder in terms of the contract. The description of some of the major items/activities indicated in this section are indicative, not absolute, and are provided to define in general terms the overall scope of the project.

Activities of each type of work to be carried out in accordance with the contract documents are listed in the Bill of Quantities in Section C2.2.

The site shall not only comprise the proclaimed road reserve but shall be extended in the broader sense to take account of all areas occupied by the Contractor, be it deliberate or unintentional, in the execution of the contract. The site includes all the land within the proclaimed limits of the road reserve along the extent of the works, borrow pits and quarry sites, stockpile areas, locations set aside for construction and supervision accommodation and any other location required for the execution of the Works.

Incidental intrusion into private or tribal property outside the road reserve shall not be permitted without the owner's written authority. Any such agreement reached with a private or tribal landowner (occupier) shall include the proviso that any material or equipment on that site shall remain the exclusive property of the Employer in terms of the contract.

This should cover the entire project life cycle from initial assessments and all statutory and legislative requirements, all specialist studies, concept designs, to final designs, implementation of designs through construction and close out of the project inclusive of any and all activities pertaining to this project. This must include any and all aspects of the project that will ensure a full and comprehensive complete delivery of a construction project P258 km 13.367 – km 32.394.

#### **1.5.1 Access to the Site**

Access to site will be provided upon the clients written approval once the engineering aspect of the project, referred to in section C2.2, Schedule B of this document is approved.

#### **1.5.2 Demolition work**

The Bidder is required to carry out any or all demolition work were needed and as necessary.

#### **1.5.3 Spoiling of surplus material**

Surplus material shall be spoiled in designated areas approved by the Employer.

#### **1.5.4 Accommodation of traffic**

The P258 is a lightly trafficked road. The Bidder shall be required to accommodate traffic on the existing roadway during any and all construction works where applicable. All traffic accommodation needs to be accounted for within your submission.

#### **1.5.5 Accommodation of other contractors**

In order to ensure the smooth running of all contracts, the bidder shall be required to liaise with, cooperate with and accommodate all other contractors working on the site, particularly when such other contractors are working in the same area simultaneously.

#### **1.5.6 Climate**

Any and all climatic elements should be accommodated for, as per the average weather condition in the area, for the project. (Consider 3 – 5-year trend).

#### **1.5.7 Environment**

The Contractor's attention is called to the requirements of Part C: Environmental Management Specification contained in section C3.3 Particular Specifications.

### **1.5.8 Labour**

A Project Liaison Committee (PLC) has been established and is a vital means of communication between all parties involved with the project. The composition of the PLC comprises representatives of the Employer and formal structures within the community.

The Bidder shall make use of these communication channels and shall appoint from amongst his site personnel a responsible person to participate in the affairs of the PLC, and this representative will be also required to attend the monthly PLC meetings.

It is mandatory that the Contractor shall interact with the community via proactive project liaison and project participation by its leaders and constituted organisations and forums, as well as through the employment of its people, and these activities shall constitute essential facets of the project.

Local labour is to be used and the employment of such labour is to be done in conjunction with the PLC. The PLC has formed a Labour Committee who shall assist the Contractor with the recruitment of local labourers to ensure an equal distribution of people employed between the various Amakhosi in the area.

### **1.6 Temporary Works**

All Temporary Works must be catered for and shall be removed from the Site on completion of the Contract at the discretion of the bidder as and when required.

### **1.7 Bill of Quantities and Programme required for construction**

The bidder is responsible to provide a full and comprehensive bill of quantities containing all elements of the project including engineering fees and disbursements. This should be part of the Schedule C1 cost. A construction programme is also required to monitor milestones within the project.

### **1.8 Contractor's campsite**

Possible locations for a campsite shall be pointed out by the client.

The bidder shall make his own arrangements for the provision of his campsite and housing for construction personnel, but the chosen site shall be subject to the approval of the Employer the local authorities and, where applicable, the Project Liaison Committee (PLC) associated with the project.

The standard of the Contractor's camp, offices, accommodation, ablution, and other facilities must comply with the requirements of all local authority, environmental and industrial regulations concerned

The Contractor is to fully familiarise himself with all local by-laws and Government regulations for the employment, transport and accommodation of labour on site.

The Contractor shall particularly note that there is a high risk of theft, vandalism and damage to property in this area and strict security will be required for all plant, establishment, temporary works and partially completed works. The Contractor shall be responsible for providing security for all plant, establishment, temporary works and partially completed works.

### **1.9 Additional requirements for construction activities**

The travelling public shall have the right of way on public roads, and the Contractor shall make use of approved methods to control the movement of his equipment and vehicles so as not to constitute a hazard on the road.

### **1.10 Project programme**

The Contractor shall submit a detailed project programme which clearly shows activities on the critical path and milestone dates that must be on or before the targeted dates of the department in terms of this project.



**PRELIMINARY PROJECT PROGRAMME**

*Tenderer to insert a Construction Programme meeting client stipulated milestone and their respective dates.*

<b>ACTIVITY</b>	<b>PLANNED COMPLETION DATE</b>

## 2. ENGINEERING

All engineering work must be in accordance with the Standards and Policies approved and used by the KwaZulu Natal Department of Transport. All designs and drawings are to be approved by the Employer before construction.

The contractor will be responsible for all environmental aspects, testing, investigations, surveys, analysis, services and all other relevant matters pertaining to the design of the project.

The geometric and pavement design proposed must be appropriate for the class of the road as per (TRH26).

Main Road 258 is classified as a class U3 road.

The following design criteria is proposed for the upgrade from km 13.367 to km 32.394:

- Design speed 60-80km/hr (Sign posted speed to be 60km/hr) in accordance with TRH 17 or SANRAL Geometric Design Guideline.
- A Type 3 cross section: SD0207/B (8.5m carriageway with 3.25m lane width and 1m surfaced shoulders in both directions). 1.5m Pedestrian Sidewalk on one side only (Grade Separated K+C) – 1.8m if guardrails are required.
- A 40mm continuously graded medium asphalt surface is recommended.
- Storm water management to be in accordance with the SANRAL Drainage Manual for macro and micro drainage systems.
- Access management to be guided by TRH 26 requirements.
- Road marking and signage to be in accordance with SARTSM.

**Six (6)** locations along the route have been identified which will require Major Drainage Structures.

The following design criteria is required for the construction of bridges and culverts and is further bound by the KZN Department of Transport's Structures Policy (TES/2012/PDA 1):-

- Hydrology and Hydraulics
  - The SANRAL Drainage Manual for Insitu Box Culverts
  - The KZN Department of Transport's Structures Manual 1994 for all Bridges in conjunction with the SANRAL Code of Procedure 2002.
- Structural Design
  - Loading
    - TMH 7 (Parts 1 & 2) in conjunction with SANS 10100 (Reinforced Concrete Design)
    - The Design Manual for Standard Box Culverts (KZN DOT)
  - Design
    - TMH 7 (Part 3) in conjunction with SANS 10100 (Reinforced Concrete Design) (*if applicable*)
    - The Design Manual for Standard Box Culverts (KZN DOT)

## 3. PROCUREMENT

The contractor shall procure goods and services according to the Employer's standards. Preferential procurement deliverables need to be adhered to, achieving a minimum of 30% CPG component to the project as per C3.3 Part G.

Tenderers must subcontract a minimum of 30% of the Engineering and Design Works (Schedule B) to companies that are BBBEE Level 1 to 2 and are EME or QSE which are at least 51% owned by black people.

The contractor is to provide employment and skills development opportunities to targeted labour – EPWP. All

participation goals are to be met in line with the Employers policies and targets.

Goods are to be procured and obtained from local sources as stipulated within the content of this document.

#### **4. CONSTRUCTION**

##### **4.1 Applicable SANS 2001 standards for construction work**

All construction work must conform with the relevant SABS or SANS specifications referred to in the 'COTO Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Works for State Road Authorities.'

##### **4.2 Applicable national and international standards**

All construction work must be undertaken in accordance with the 'Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Works for State Road Authorities', as prepared by the South Africa Committee of Land Transport Officials (COTO)

##### **4.3 Particular / generic specifications**

The 'Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Works for State Road Authorities' is applicable to this Contract.

##### **4.4 Certification by recognized bodies**

TBC

##### **4.5 Plant and materials provided by the Employer**

No plant and materials are to be provided by the Employer.

##### **4.6 Services and facilities provided by the Employer**

No other services or facilities are to be provided by the Employer.

#### **5. MANAGEMENT**

##### **5.1 Applicable SANS 1921 standards**

The following parts of SANS 1921 and associated specification data are applicable:

###### **5.1.1.1 Additional clauses:**

###### **(a) Site meetings and procedures**

Site meetings shall be convened monthly The Contractor shall keep on site a set of minutes of all site meetings, daily records of resources (people and equipment employed), a site memoranda book, a complete set of contract working drawings and a copy of the procurement document, and shall make these available at all reasonable times to all persons concerned with the contract.

###### **(b) Water and electricity**

The Contractor is to provide water and electricity as described in clause 4.19 of FIDIC SILVER BOOK.

### 5.1.2 SANS 1921-6 Part 6: HIV/AIDS awareness

Specification data associated with SANS 1921-6	
Clause No.	Essential data
4.2.1(a)	A qualified service provider is one that is an accredited or provisionally accredited training service provider in the HIV/AIDS field. A list of accredited service providers can be obtained from the Construction SETA (CETA) (tel. 011 265 5900), Health and Welfare SETA (HWSETA) (011 622 6852) or on the Health and Welfare SETA website: <a href="http://www.hwseta.org.za">www.hwseta.org.za</a> .
4.2.1(a)	The HIV/AIDS awareness programme is to be repeated at four monthly intervals throughout the duration of the contract.

#### 5.1.2.1 Additional clauses:

##### (a) Workshops

The duration of each workshop shall not be less than 2½ hours.

### 5.2 Recording of weather

The Contractor shall erect a rain gauge and record the rainfall. This information together with other details of the prevailing weather conditions shall be recorded in the daily site diary.

### 5.3 Unauthorised persons

The Contractor shall keep unauthorised persons away from the Works at all times. Under no circumstances may the Contractor's personnel be accommodated on the site.

### 5.4 Management meetings

Management meetings are to be held weekly at a time convenient to all concerned, to discuss planning and health and safety amongst other things. Attendance by the Construction Manager and the Employer on site is mandatory, and attendance by other interested parties will be by invitation.

### 5.5 Forms for contract administration

The bidder is to provide standard forms for 'Site Diary', 'Site Memoranda', 'Requests for Inspection' and any others deemed to be necessary during the contract.

### 5.6 Electronic payments

Payments of approved payment claims will be made electronically upon submission of the Contractor's banking details.

### 5.7 Daily records

A site diary is to be compiled by the Construction Manager and the Contracts manger on site and is to be agreed and signed by both parties. The original signed copy is to be retained by the Employer.

The Contractor is to keep daily records of people and equipment on site in a format to be agreed by the Employer and is to provide copies to the Employer when requested.

### 5.8 Payment certificates

Details of measurements will be confirmed together with the bill of quantities and programme before payment is made.

#### **5.9 Permits**

No security/entrance permits are required by the Contractor's personnel to enter the site.

#### **5.10 Proof of compliance with the law**

There are requirements for the Contractor to verify compliance with any legislation.

#### **5.11 Submission of reports**

The contractor shall submit monthly reports in accordance with the specifications in Part F: Expanded Public Works Programme and Part G: Small Contractor Development. The bidder should also submit monthly progress reports throughout the entire duration of the contract.

**C3.2: PROJECT SPECIFICATIONS**

**PART B: DETAILED SPECIFICATIONS PER ACTIVITY**

The department will fully remunerate the consortium after the completion of each stage as per our National Framework for Infrastructure Procurement and Delivery Management (FIDPM policy). Therefore, it is the responsibility of the Consortium to ensure that each stage as listed on SCHEDULE B and SCHEDULE C below is approved before moving to the next stage.

**SCHEDULE A: PRELIMINARIES**

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
A1	<b>TIME RELATED</b> - Time related obligations should include but not limited to the monthly running costs of the project. This should ensure that all tools, space and requirements needed to complete assessments, designs, drawings and documentation is acquired. For construction the contractor should account for all site offices, laboratories, accommodation, running costs of electricity, water, sewage, internet, telephone and other monthly costs required to perform tasks.
A2	<b>FIXED</b> - Fixed obligations should include but not limited to the setting up his organization, personnel, camps, accommodation, ablution and other facilities, offices, stores, workshops, other temporary structures, fencing, testing facilities and constructional plant on site and the removal of at completion of the contract. This obligation should also include all insurances, sureties and professional indemnities for the project. All insurances, sureties and professional indemnities should be aligned with the total form of offer.

**SCHEDULE B: ENGINEERING AND DESIGN WORKS**

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
B1	<p><b>CONDUCT ASSESMENTS (EXPROPRIATION, IDENTIFACTION OF SERVICES, SURVEYS, ANALYSIS OF SITE AND TESTS AND SITE INVESTIGATIONS REQUIRED FOR DESIGN) AND APPOINTMENT OF DISPUTE ADJUDICATION OR AVOIDANCE (DAAB)</b></p> <p>All work completed under activity B1 is to conform to, but not limited to TRH 22, TMH 9 and all other relevant design code documents.</p> <p>Testing in accordance but not limited to TRH 4 and COTO.</p> <p>The relevant statutory and legislative compliance information needs to be obtained by the bidder relating to all services (wayleaves), expropriation and mining activities.</p> <p>Appointment of PLC and payment of PLC for the entire duration of the project. This will include induction of PLC. Allow for a maximum of 30 PLC members at R700.00 per member per month.</p> <p>Appointment of CLO for entire duration of the project at a scaled labour rate per hour multiplied by 1.5 per hour based on an 8-hour working day.</p> <p>This shall include all necessary equipment that will assist PLC and CLO to perform they duties (internet, telephone, computer, office space, etc)</p> <p>Dispute shall be decided by the DAAB in accordance with clause 21.4. The parties shall jointly appoint the member (s) of DAAB within the time stated in the Contract Data.</p>

<p><b>B2</b></p>	<p><b>PREPARE INITIAL CONCEPT DESIGN AND RELEVANT DOCUMENTATION. ESTABLISH ANY FURTHER SURVEYS, TESTS AND/OR INVESTIGATIONS.</b></p> <p>All work completed under this activity to conform to, but not limited to, TRH 4, TRH 17, TRH 16, SAPEM – CHAPTER 10 AND TG2, SANS Manuals, SANRAL Geometric Design Manual, Department of Transport Drainage Manual and TRH 3 for seal designs.</p> <p><b>FIPDM Stage 2 - Concept (Preliminary Design)</b></p> <p>Document the initial design criteria, cost plan, design options and the selection of the preferred design option, or the methods and procedures required to maintain the condition of infrastructure for the project.</p> <p><b>Stage 2 is complete when the Concept Report or the Feasibility Report as per the Department’s prescribed format, is approved.</b></p>
<p><b>B3</b></p>	<p><b>PREPARE DETAILED DESIGNS AND DRAWINGS</b></p> <p>All work completed under this activity to conform to, but not limited to, TRH 4, , TRH 16, SAPEM – CHAPTER 10 AND TG2, SANS Manuals, SANRAL Geometric Design Manual, Department of Transport Drainage Manual and TRH 3 for seal designs.</p> <p><b>FIPDM Stage 3 – Design Development (Detailed Design)</b></p> <p>Design Development which shall include the following phases</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Concept</li> <li>o Preliminary</li> <li>o Detailed design</li> </ul> <p>A design development report which develops in detail the approved concept to finalise the design and definition criteria, sets out the integrated developed design, and contains the cost plan and schedule for one or more packages.</p> <p><b>Stage 3 is complete when the Design Development Report, as per the Department’s prescribed format, is approved.</b></p>
<p><b>B4</b></p>	<p><b>PREPARE WORKING DRAWINGS, METHOD STATEMENTS AND PROCUREMENT DOCUMENTS FOR CPG CONTRACTORS</b></p> <p>All work completed under this activity to conform to, but not limited to, COTO and SANRAL M2 Construction Quality Control Manual.</p> <p><b>FIPDM Stage 4 – Design Documentation</b></p> <p>Design Documentation which shall include the following</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>o Tender Documentation.</li> </ul> <p>Production information which provides the detailing, performance definition, specification, sizing and positioning of all systems and components enabling either construction (where the contractor is able to build directly from the information prepared) or the production of manufacturing and installation information for construction.</p> <p><b>Stage 4 is complete when the Design Documentation Report (Draft Contract Document), as per the Department’s prescribed format, is approved.</b></p> <p>Provisional Sum for Disputes and Arbitration to be provided by the compiler. This provisional sum is for the amount to be used by the Department to pay for the appointment of the DAAB and all relevant expenses relating to any disputes and arbitration matters.</p>

**SCHEDULE C: CONSTRUCTION AND CLOSE OUT**

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
C1	<p>IMPLEMENT THE CONSTRUCTION OF THE UPGRADE OF P258 FROM KM 13.367 - KM 23.394 IN THE ZULULAND DISTRICT UNDER THE EMPANGENI REGION INCLUSIVE OF ALL ACCEPTANCE TESTS.</p> <p>All work completed under this activity to conform to, but not limited to COTO, SANS and SANRAL M2 Construction Quality Control Manual</p> <p>Traffic accommodation is as per SARTSM.</p> <p><b>FIPDM Stage 5 - Works</b></p> <p>-Administration and Monitoring of the Works Contract Completed works which are capable of being occupied or used.</p> <p><b>Stage 5 is complete when the Works Completion Report (Practical Completion Certificate), as per the Department's prescribed format, is approved.</b></p>
C2	<p>CLOSE OUT (MATERIAL AND DRAWING AS-BUILTS, HANDOVER DOCUMENTATION TO CLIENT AND PREPARE FINAL ACCOUNTS FOR PROJECT)</p> <p>Work carried out for this activity is in accordance with the Department of Transport Standards.</p> <p><b>FIPDM Stage 6 – Handover</b></p> <p>Finalise and assemble record information which accurately reflects the infrastructure that is acquired, rehabilitated, refurbished or maintained;</p> <p><b>Stage 6 is complete when the Handover/Record Information Report, as per the Department's prescribed format, is approved.</b></p> <p><b>FIPDM Stage 7 - Close-Out</b></p> <p>Works with notified defects corrected, final account settled, record information archived and the close-out report issued.</p> <p><b>Stage 7 is complete when the Close-out Report, as per the Department's prescribed format, is approved. The Close-Out Stage commences when the Department accepts liability for the works.</b></p>



**SCHEDULE F: EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME (EPWP)**

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
F1	<p>EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME</p> <p>The bidder is required to ensure that the minimum targets of employment is achieved during the course of the project. Labour, training and employment of people may be done at any time the contract, i.e. during the engineering and construction part of the project. Reporting on this must be completed as per the prescribed reporting structure within this document or as instructed by the client. The calculation of minimum labour employed is found in the tender section of this document.</p>
	<p>Provisional Sum for NYS and EPWP Training</p>

**SCHEDULE G: SMALL CONTRACTOR DEVELOPMENT (CPG)**

SECTION	DESCRIPTION
G1	<p>SMALL CONTRACTOR DEVELOPMENT</p> <p>A minimum of 30% CPG and a minimum of 30% RET consultants is required to be met on this project. A detailed specification is provided for the construction part of the CPG component within this document. This is there to ensure that the client's requirements are met with CPG contractors during the construction part of the project. It is further noted that sub-consulting (RET) is required at a minimum of 30% during the duration of the project.</p>

**C3.3: PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS**

In addition to the Standard Specifications and the Project Specifications, the following Particular Specifications shall apply to this contract and are bound in hereafter:

PART C: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT SPECIFICATION .....	C42
PART E: OHSA 1993 HEALTH AND SAFETY SPECIFICATION .....	C47
PART F: EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME.....	C55
PART G: SMALL CONTRACTOR DEVELOPMENT .....	C90
PART H: CONTRACT SKILLS DEVELOPMENT GOAL.....	C108

### 3.3 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS

#### PART C: ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT SPECIFICATION

##### C1. SCOPE

The Employer recognises environmental management as a key component of road infrastructure development and as part of its environmental policy has developed this environmental management specification as a tool for continual improvement in environmental performance.

This environmental management specification prescribes the methods by which proper environmental controls are to be implemented by the Contractor. The duration over which the Contractor's controls shall be in place cover the construction period of the project as well as the limited time after contract completion defined by the FIDIC SILVER BOOK 2017 clause 11 as the Defects Notification Period (maintenance period).

##### C2. ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT PLAN

In order to ensure that the construction work is carried out in an environmentally sensitive manner, strict compliance with the Environmental Management Plan (EMP) guidelines is required. The purpose of the EMP is to:

- Encourage good management practices through planning and commitment to environmental issues,
- Provide rational and practical environmental guidelines to:
  - (i) Minimise disturbance of the natural environment,
  - (ii) Prevent pollution of land, air and water,
  - (iii) Prevent soil erosion and facilitate re-vegetation.
- Adopt the best practicable means available to prevent or minimise adverse environmental impact,
- Develop waste management practices based on prevention, minimisation, recycling, treatment or disposal of wastes,
- Train employees and contractors with regard to environmental obligations.

##### C3. ADMINISTRATION OF ENVIRONMENTAL OBLIGATIONS

Environmental compliance is the contractor's responsibility in totality in relation to the project (eg: EIA and WULA..etc).

The appointment of an independent environmental control officer shall be the sole responsibility of the contractor.

The Contractor is responsible for the implementation of this EMP to ensure sound environmental management during the construction phase of a project.

The Contractor shall receive and implement any instruction issued by the Employer relating to compliance with the EMP including the removal of personnel or equipment.

Compliance with the provisions contained herein or any condition imposed by the environmental approvals, shall become the responsibility of the Contractor through an approved Environmental Officer (EO). The Contractor shall nominate a person from among his site personnel to fulfil this function and submit to the Employer for his approval the curriculum vitae of the proposed EO. This request for approval shall be given, in writing, at least fourteen days before the commencement of any construction activity clearly setting out reasons for the nomination, and with sufficient detail to enable the Employer to make a decision.

Once a nominated representative of the Contractor has been approved as the EO, the EO shall be the responsible person for ensuring that the provisions of this EMP are complied with for the duration of the contract. The EO shall submit monthly written reports of compliance with the EMP to the Employer.

In addition to the compliance duties relating to this EMP, the EO shall also provide full cooperation whenever the Contractor is subjected to regular environmental audits

#### **C4. TRAINING AND INDUCTION OF EMPLOYEES**

The Contractor has a responsibility to ensure that all those people involved in the project are aware of and familiar with the environmental requirements for the project (this includes subcontractors and local labour). The EMP shall be part of the terms of reference for all contractors, subcontractors and suppliers.

#### **C5. COMPLAINTS REGISTER AND ENVIRONMENTAL INCIDENT BOOK**

Any complaints received by the project team from the public will be recorded. The complaint should be brought to the attention of the Construction Manager, who will respond.

The following information must be recorded:

- Time, date and nature of the complaint,
- Type of communication (telephone, letter or email),
- Name, contact address and telephone number of the complainant,
- Response and investigation undertaken and
- Actions taken and by whom.

All complaints received will be investigated and a response given to the complainant within 14 days.

All environmental incidents occurring on the site will be recorded. The following information will be provided:

- Time, date, location and nature of the incident,
- Actions taken and by whom.

#### **C6. SITE CLEANLINESS AND NEATNESS**

- Location of a construction camp is to be approved by the Employer and is to be restored to its previous condition after completion of construction.
- The construction camp should preferably be fenced with a 1,8m Bonnox fence or similar approved.
- All materials, equipment, plant and vehicles must be stored within the construction camp.
- A dedicated area must be made available for construction staff to change and store their personal belongings.

#### **C7. ACCESS**

- Access to existing roads, schools, buildings, shops and residential properties must not be impeded during construction.
- Access roads utilised by the Contractor must be maintained in good condition.

#### **C8. BORROW PITS**

- Mining authorisations (permits) for borrow pits must be obtained from the Department of Mineral Resources (DMR) in consultation with the Department of Water and Sanitation (DWS).
- Spoil dumps resulting from borrow pits must not interfere with any natural surface drainage.
- Borrow pits must be rehabilitated after use in accordance with the requirements of DMR and DWS.

#### **C9. DUST CONTROL / AIR QUALITY**

- Dust suppression measures must be implemented during construction by ensuring that all surfaces prone to dust generation are kept damp (e.g. use of water tanker).
- Ensure that vehicles and equipment are in good working condition and that emissions are not excessive.
- Special care must be taken in areas where the route passes close to schools and residential areas.
- The speed of construction vehicles must be reduced.

#### **C10. FAUNA**

- Contractors' and subcontractors' staff and workers may not chase, catch or kill animals encountered during construction.

**C11. FIRE PREVENTION AND CONTROL**

- Smoking is prohibited in the vicinity of flammable substances.
- The Contractor must ensure that fire-fighting equipment is available on site, particularly where flammable substances are being stored or used, and that construction staff are aware of where it is kept and how it is operated.
- Fires started for comfort (warmth) are prohibited, due to the risk of veld fires and risk to adjacent property owners' lands.

**C12. GRAVE SITES**

- Grave sites in close proximity to the road must not be disturbed during construction.

**C13. MATERIALS HANDLING AND SPILLS MANAGEMENT**

- Any hazardous materials to be used during construction (e.g. lime, fuel and paint) are to be stored in a designated area at the campsite.
- The storage containers/facilities (including any diesel or petrol tanks) must be placed on an impermeable surface and surrounded by a bund wall, in order to ensure that accidental spillage does not pollute the environment.
- Workers must at all times be made aware of the health and safety risks associated with any hazardous substances used (e.g. smoking near fuel tanks), and must be provided with appropriate protective clothing/equipment in case of spillages or accidents.
- Ensure all staff and contractors undergo relevant training in the maintenance of equipment to prevent the accidental discharge or spill of fuel, oil, lubricants and other chemicals.
- Any spill of potentially hazardous materials must be cleaned up immediately (potentially hazardous materials on site include paint, oil, grease, fuel and turpentine).
- The area of contaminated soil or spill must be deposited into the hazardous waste container(s).
- The Contractor should keep Peat Sorb or a similar absorbent on site to clean up any spills. The absorbent must be stored in a designated area and be available for inspection.
- All spills are to be recorded in the environmental incident book.

**C14. NOISE**

- Noise generating activities must be restricted to between 07:00 and 17:00 Monday to Friday, unless otherwise approved by the appropriate competent person in consultation with adjacent landowners/affected persons.
- All equipment, vehicles and machinery must be in good working condition and be equipped with sound mufflers if necessary.
- Construction staff must be trained and made aware of not creating unnecessary noise such as hooting and shouting.

**C15. POLLUTION CONTROL**

- Soil and water pollution through usage of fuel, oil, paint, bitumen or other hazardous substances must be avoided.
- All construction vehicles are to be maintained in good working order so as to prevent soil or water pollution from oil, fuel or other leaks, and to reduce noise pollution.

**C16. RIVERS AND STREAMS**

- During construction of bridge structures, there must be no obstruction of the water flow of rivers and streams.
- Excavated material must not be stockpiled on or near riverbanks, in order to prevent sedimentation occurring.
- Erosion control measures must be employed both during and after construction.
- No impediments to natural surface water flow, other than approved erosion control measures, must occur.

#### **C17. SAFETY**

- Safety measures, such as detour signs, must be implemented during construction to ensure the safety of workers, pedestrians and drivers/passengers in vehicles in the vicinity of construction work.
- Special care must be taken in the vicinity of schools to ensure the safety of children wishing to cross the road under construction.
- The relevant signage (e.g. speed control signs) must be erected alongside the road during the operation phase in order to control traffic.
- Accommodation must be made for pedestrian pathways alongside the road during the construction and operation phases.

#### **C18. SOIL MANAGEMENT**

- Storm water drainage pipes must be installed alongside the road in all areas susceptible to soil erosion.
- Erosion should be minimised by the construction of meadow drains and the planting of indigenous vegetation on the side slopes and drains to reduce flow velocity of storm water.
- Spoil from cuts may be used in existing erosion gullies.
- Stone pitching and gabions should be constructed at pipe culvert outlets.
- Accidental spills of contaminants onto the ground e.g. oil, concrete, fuel and chemicals should be removed together with the contaminated soil.
- If necessary, an absorbent such as Peat Sorb should be used to aid in cleaning up the spill. The contaminated soil should be disposed of in an appropriate container, depending on its classification.
- Servicing and refuelling of vehicles must only be carried out at the construction camp.

#### **C19. WORKER CONDUCT**

Code of Conduct for Construction Personnel:

- Do not leave the construction site untidy and strewn with rubbish which will attract animal pests.
- Do not set fires.
- Do not cause any unnecessary, disturbing noise at the construction camp/site or at any designated worker collection/drop off points.
- Do not drive a construction-related vehicle under the influence of alcohol.
- Do not exceed the national speed limits on public roads or exceed the recommended speed limits on the site.
- Do not drive a vehicle which is generating excessive noise or gaseous pollution (noisy vehicles must be reported and repaired as soon as possible).
- Do not litter along the roadsides, including both the public and private roads.
- Do not pollute any water bodies (whether flowing or not).
- No member of the construction team is allowed to enter the areas outside the construction site.

#### **C20. TRAFFIC DISTURBANCES AND DIVERSIONS**

- Any traffic diversions must be undertaken with the approval of all relevant authorities and in accordance with all relevant legislation.
- Wherever possible, traffic diversion must only take place on existing disturbed areas and remain within the existing road reserve.
- Traffic diversion routes must be rehabilitated after use.

#### **C21. VEGETATION**

- Only vegetation falling directly on the route must be removed where necessary.
- Alien vegetation within the road reserve must be eradicated, and management measures must be implemented for future control of these species.
- Vegetation that has been removed from large areas (e.g. on traffic diversion routes) during construction must be replaced with indigenous vegetation after construction has been completed.

## **C22. WASTE MANAGEMENT**

- All general, non-hazardous waste must be placed in a skip container and disposed of at a registered waste disposal site.
- The Contractor is to ensure that the portable toilet facilities at the campsite are properly maintained and in working order.
- No disposal, or leakage, of sewage must occur on or near the site.
- All hazardous waste (e.g. oil, paint, empty lime bags, and contaminated wash water) must be stored in leakproof containers and disposed of at a registered hazardous waste disposal site.
- The contents of waste storage containers must, under no circumstances, be emptied to the surrounding area. In general, littering, discarding or burying of any materials is not allowed on site or along the route.
- Adequate waste receptacles must be available at strategic points around the construction camp and site for all domestic refuse and to minimise the occurrence of littering.
- Concrete rubble must be collected and disposed of as directed by the Employer.
- Each working area must be cleared of litter and building waste (e.g. rubble, wood and concrete packets) on completion of the day's work.
- Any spill around the container(s) should be treated as per clause C13 and C18.

### C3.3 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS

#### PART E: OHS 1993 HEALTH AND SAFETY SPECIFICATION

##### E1. SCOPE

This part covers the health and safety requirements to be met by the Contractor to ensure a continued safe and healthy working environment for all employees, subcontractors, the Employer, inspectors and all other persons entering the site of works.

This specification shall be read in conjunction with the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No 85 of 1993 and amendment Act No 181 of 1993) and the corresponding Construction Regulations 2014, and all other safety codes and specifications referred to in the said Act and Construction Regulations.

In terms of the OHS 1993 Agreement in Section C1.4 of the Contract document, the status of the Contractor as mandatory to the Employer (client) is that of an employer in his own right, responsible for compliance with all provisions of OHS 1993 and the Construction Regulations 2014.

This specification and the Contractor's own Health and Safety Plan as well as the Construction Regulations 2014, shall be displayed on site or made available for inspection by inspectors, the Employer, the Construction Health and Safety Agent, subcontractors, employees, representatives of trade unions and any other persons entering the site of works.

##### E2. DEFINITIONS

For the purpose of this contract the following shall apply:

E2.1 "**Construction Health and Safety Agent**" (CHSA) means any competent person who acts as a representative for the Employer in managing health and safety on a construction project for the Employer and who has satisfied the registration criteria of the SACPCMP to perform the required functions.

E2.2 "**Contractor**" where used in the contract documents and in this specification, means the Contractor as defined in the FIDIC SILVER BOOK, and it shall have the exact same meaning as "**principal contractor**" as defined in the Construction Regulations 2014. "**Contractor**" and "**principal contractor**" are therefore interchangeable and shall be read in the context of the relevant document.

In this specification the terms "**principal contractor**" and "**contractor**" are replaced with "**Contractor**" and "**subcontractor**" respectively.

For the purpose of this contract the Contractor will, in terms of OHS 1993, be the mandatory, without derogating from his status as an employer in his own right.

E2.3 "**Employer**" where used in the contract documents and in this specification, means the Employer as defined in the FIDIC SILVER BOOK and it shall have the exact same meaning as "**client**" as defined in the Construction Regulations 2014. "**Employer**" and "**client**" are therefore interchangeable and shall be read in the context of the relevant document.

E2.4 "**Employer's Agent**" where used in this specification, means the Employer's Agent as defined in the FIDIC SILVER BOOK or the employer.

##### E3. EMPLOYER'S BASELINE RISK ASSESSMENT

###### E3.1 Risk information

The information presented in this clause is based on the Employer's baseline risk assessment prepared specifically for this contract.

This information describes the type of work required in terms of this contract that will be accompanied by dangers, hazards and risks which the Contractor shall be required to identify, analyse, manage, monitor and review in terms of the Health and Safety Plan and risk assessments.



This information is neither prescriptive nor exhaustive and is provided as a guideline to Tenderers in preparing their tender submissions, and to the successful Contractor as a basis for the preparation of the site-specific risk assessments to be performed by the Contractor in terms of Construction Regulation 9.

Tenderers shall make their own assessment of the dangers, hazards and risks that can be expected during the course of this contract, which may include dangers, hazards and risks not identified in the baseline risk assessment, including those that may arise from specific methods of construction employed by the Contractor, and shall make due allowance in their tendered rates and prices for all costs related to complying with the provisions of the Act and Construction Regulations.

This information is given in good faith for the guidance of Tenderers, and no additional payment shall be made as a result of any inaccuracies, discrepancies or omissions contained therein.

### **E3.2 Baseline risk assessment**

The following is a list of risks identified which forms the Baseline Risk Assessment for the project prepared by the Employer in terms of Construction Regulation 5(1)(a).

### **E3.3 Guidelines for construction and maintenance projects under Covid-19 Lockdown**

The Employer has prepared guidelines which set out the key principles and minimum requirements that define responsible, healthy and safe operations for road construction operations under COVID-19 Lockdown conditions, for the Contractor to comply with. In addition, the Contractor shall comply with any new COVID-19 Regulations issued by Government.

The guidelines have been included as Annexure A at the end of this Project Document.

## **E4. APPLICATION FOR CONSTRUCTION WORK PERMIT**

Where the contract meets the requirements of Construction Regulation 3, the Employer must at least 30 days before commencement of the work and in accordance with the requirements of Construction Regulation 3, apply to the Provincial Director of the Department of Labour in writing for a construction work permit to perform construction work. The Employer's application must be done in a form similar to Annexure 1 of the Construction Regulations, and submitted with the required documentation, some of which the Contractor shall provide as stated in the Contract Data.

A copy of the construction work permit must be kept on site in the occupational health and safety file, available for inspection by inspectors, the Employer, the Employer's Agent, the Construction Health and Safety Agent, subcontractors, employees, representative trade unions and any other persons on the site. The Provincial Director will assign a site-specific number for each construction site, which must be conspicuously displayed at the main entrance to the site.

## **E5. NOTIFICATION OF CONSTRUCTION WORK**

Where the contract meets the requirements of Construction Regulation 4, the Contractor shall, before commencement of the work and in accordance with the requirements of Construction Regulation 4, notify the Provincial Director of the Department of Labour of the intention to carry out the construction work, using the pro forma form included as Annexure 2 to this Health and Safety Specification.

A copy of the notification form must be kept on site, available for inspection by inspectors, the Employer, the Employer's Agent, the Construction Health and Safety Agent, subcontractors, employees, representative trade unions and any other persons on the site. A copy of the notification form shall also be kept on the health and safety file, and a further copy shall be forwarded to the Employer for his records.

## **E6. HEALTH AND SAFETY PLAN**

Before commencement of any construction work, the Contractor shall prepare a project specific Health and Safety Plan complying with the requirements of Construction Regulation 7(1)(a) and this Health and Safety Specification.

The Health and Safety Plan must include a risk assessment performed and recorded in writing by a competent person as required in terms of Construction Regulation 9. The risk assessment shall identify and evaluate the risks and hazards that may be expected during the execution of the work under the contract, and it shall include a documented plan and applicable safe work procedures to mitigate, reduce or control the risks and hazards identified.

The Health and Safety Plan shall be available on site for inspection by inspectors, the Employer, the Employer's Agent, subcontractors, employees, representative trade unions, and health and safety representatives and committee members, and must be monitored and reviewed periodically by the Contractor.

## **E7. APPOINTMENT OF EMPLOYEES AND SUBCONTRACTORS**

### **E7.1 Appointments**

The Contractor shall appoint in writing all employees.

The Contractor shall appoint in writing all subcontractors, and such appointments shall be in compliance with the requirements of Construction Regulation 7.

### **E7.2 Health and safety induction training**

No person shall be allowed or permitted to enter the site of the works unless such person has undergone health and safety induction training pertaining to the hazards prevalent on the site.

The Contractor shall ensure that all employees under his control, including subcontractors and their employees, undergo health and safety induction training by a competent person before commencement of construction work in compliance with Construction Regulations 7(5) and 9(3) and (4).

The Contractor shall ensure that all visitors to the construction site undergo health and safety induction and are provided with the necessary personal protective equipment in compliance with Construction Regulation 7(6).

### **E7.3 Medical certificate of fitness**

The Contractor shall ensure that every employee, including subcontractors and their employees, has a valid medical certificate of fitness issued in compliance with Construction Regulation 7(1)(g) or 7(8) as applicable.

## **E8. APPOINTMENT OF SAFETY PERSONNEL**

### **E8.1 Construction manager**

Refer to Construction Regulation 8(1), (2), (3) and (4).

The Contractor shall appoint a full-time **Construction Manager** with the duty of managing all the construction work on the site, including the duty of ensuring occupational health and safety compliance.

The Contractor may also have to appoint one or more **assistant construction managers** to assist the Construction Manager where justified by the scope and complexity of the works.

### **E8.2 Construction health and safety officer**

Refer to Construction Regulation 8(5) and (6).

Taking into consideration the size of the project and the dangers, hazards or risks that can be expected, the Contractor shall appoint in writing a full-time or part-time **construction health and safety officer** to assist in the control of all health and safety related aspects on the site. The construction health and safety officer shall be registered as required by the Chief Inspector of the Department of Labour and shall have the necessary competencies and resources to assist the Contractor.

### **E8.3 Construction supervisor**

Refer to Construction Regulation 8(7), (8), (9) and (10).

The Contractor shall appoint a **construction supervisor** responsible for construction activities and ensuring occupational health and safety compliance on the construction site.

The Contractor may also have to appoint one or more competent employees to assist the construction supervisor where justified by the scope and complexity of the works.

### **E8.4 Health and safety representatives**

In terms of Sections 17 and 18 of the Act (OHSA 1993) the Contractor, being the employer in terms of the Act for the execution of the contract, shall appoint a **health and safety representative** whenever he has more than 20 employees in his employment on the site of the works. The health and safety representative must be selected from employees who are employed in a full-time capacity at a specific workplace.

The number of health and safety representatives for a workplace shall be at least one for every 50 employees.

The function of health and safety representative(s) will be to review the effectiveness of health and safety measures, to identify potential hazards and major incidents, to examine causes of incidents (in collaboration with his employer, the Contractor), to investigate complaints by employees relating to health and safety at work, to make representations to the employer (Contractor) or inspector on general matters affecting the health and safety of employees, to inspect the workplace, plant, machinery, etc. on a regular basis, to participate in consultations with inspectors and to attend meetings of the health and safety committee.

### **E8.5 Health and safety committee**

In terms of Section 19 of the Act (OHSA 1993), the Contractor (as employer) shall establish one or more **health and safety committees** where there are two or more health and safety representatives at a workplace. The persons selected by the Contractor to serve on the committee shall be designated in writing.

The function of the health and safety committee shall be to hold meetings at regular intervals but at least once every three months, to review the health and safety measures on the contract, to discuss incidents related to health and safety with the Contractor and the inspector, to make recommendations regarding health and safety to the Contractor and to keep record of recommendations and reports made by the committee.

### **E8.6 Competent persons**

The Contractor shall appoint in writing designated competent employees and/or other competent persons as required by the Act and Regulations. Such appointments shall be in accordance with the relevant applicable sections of the Act and Regulations as determined by the requirements of the contract.

A competent person may be appointed for more than one part of the construction work with the understanding that the person must be suitably qualified and able to supervise at the same time the construction work in all the work situations for which he has been appointed.

The appointment of competent persons to supervise parts of the construction work does not relieve the Contractor from any of his responsibilities for compliance with **all** requirements of the Construction Regulations.

## **E9. RECORDS AND REGISTERS**

The Contractor shall keep records and registers related to health and safety on site as required by the relevant applicable sections of the Act and Regulations as determined by the requirements of the contract. Such records and registers shall be available for periodic inspection by inspectors, the Employer, the Employer's Agent, the Construction Health and Safety Agent, subcontractors, employees and representatives of trade unions.

#### **E10. CONTRACTOR'S RESPONSIBILITIES**

For this contract the Contractor will be the mandatary of the Employer (Client), as defined in the Act (OHSA 1993), which means that the Contractor has the status of employer in his own right in respect of the contract. The Contractor is therefore responsible for all the duties and obligations of an employer as set out in the Act (OHSA 1993) and the Construction Regulations 2014.

Before commencement of work under the contract, the Contractor shall enter into an agreement with the Employer (Client) in terms of C1.4 'Agreement in terms of Section 37(2) of the Occupational Health and Safety Act No. 85 of 1993', to confirm his status as mandatary (employer) for the contract under consideration.

***The Contractor is advised in his own interest to make a careful study of the Act and the Construction Regulations, as ignorance of the Act and the Regulations will not be accepted in any proceedings related to non-conformance to the Act and the Regulations.***

FIDIC SILVER BOOK

**ANNEXURE 2**

**OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY ACT, 1993  
(Regulation 4 of the Construction Regulations, 2014)**

**NOTIFICATION OF CONSTRUCTION WORK**

1. (a) Name and postal address of principal contractor:

.....  
.....

(b) Name and telephone number of principal contractor's contact person:

.....

2. Principal contractor's compensation registration number:

3. (a) Name and postal address of client:

.....  
.....

(b) Name and telephone number of client's contact person or agent:

.....

4. (a) Name and postal address of designer(s) for the project:

.....  
.....

(b) Name and telephone number of designer's(s') contact person(s):

.....  
.....

5. Name and telephone number of principal contractor's construction manager on site appointed in terms of regulation 8(1):

.....

6. Name(s) of principal contractor's assistant construction manager(s) on site appointed in terms of regulation 8(2):

---

**ANNEXURE 2 - Continued**

---

7. Exact physical address of the construction site or site office:

8. Nature of the construction work:

.....  
.....

9. Expected commencement date:

10. Expected completion date:

.....

11. Estimated maximum number of persons on the construction site:

Total: ..... Male: ..... Female:

.....

12. Planned number of contractors on the construction site accountable to principal contractor:

.....

13. Name(s) of contractors already selected:

.....

.....

.....

---

.....  
**Principal Contractor** **Date**

.....  
**Client's Agent (where applicable)** **Date**

.....  
**Client** **Date**

- THIS DOCUMENT IS TO BE FORWARDED TO THE OFFICE OF THE DEPARTMENT OF LABOUR **PRIOR TO COMMENCEMENT** OF WORK ON SITE.

### C3.3 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS

#### PART F: EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME

##### F1. SCOPE

This part provides the specifications with regard to the following:

- (a) The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP); and
- (b) The National Youth Service (NYS) programme, which is a government programme implemented by the National Department of Public Works forming part of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).

The Contractor shall be required to participate in job creation (employment of local labour) by executing various portions of the Works using local labour (unskilled or semi-skilled), recruited from the local community, who are South African Citizens or foreigners in possession of a work visa issued by the Department of Home Affairs (only one such foreigner may be employed on any project). Such local labour shall be the targeted participants in the EPWP and NYS programmes.

Furthermore, in order to avoid duplication of training facilities, the provision of training facilities for all structured training, including for the structured training described in Part G: Small Contractor Development (in those instances where Part G is included in the contract), shall be measured and paid for in terms of the pay items provided in this Part F.

##### F2. EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME (EPWP)

###### F2.1 Labour-enhanced construction, supervision and management for the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)

The Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) is a multi-sectoral government initiative to create jobs. In the case of the infrastructure sector, existing government expenditure is realigned using labour-enhanced technologies to create job opportunities. This involves the use of both labour and construction equipment, where labour is preferred and construction equipment is used appropriately.

All work undertaken in terms of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) shall be implemented using labour-enhanced construction methods to the extent economically feasible, in accordance with the "Guidelines for the Implementation of Labour-Enhanced Infrastructure Projects under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) Third Edition 2015".

The aforementioned guidelines can be downloaded from the EPWP website of the Department of Public Works (<http://www.epwp.gov.za/>).

Contractors shall note that they shall employ in labour-enhanced works only the following supervisory and management staff that have completed the required Skills Programme in terms of Appendix C of the aforementioned guidelines:

- (a) Foremen / Supervisors at NQF level 4 "National Certificate: Supervision of Civil Engineering Construction Processes";
- (b) Site Agent / Construction Manager at NQF level 5 "Manage Labour-Enhanced Construction Processes" or equivalent Quality Council for Trades and Occupations (QCTO) qualifications at NQF level 5 or 7.

In addition to their normal supervisory and management functions, the aforementioned supervisory and management staff shall also be responsible for setting the workers' daily tasks in accordance with labour-enhanced construction principles, and for ensuring that the EPWP job creation reporting data is accurately recorded on a daily basis and compiled and submitted to the Employer each month in accordance with clause F4 of this Part F.



## **F2.2 Labour laws applicable to the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)**

The work to be undertaken on this contract by unskilled or semi-skilled workers under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) shall be implemented in accordance with:

- (a) the Code of Good Practice for Employment and Conditions of Work for Expanded Public Works Programmes (EPWP), issued in terms of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997 by the Minister of Labour in Government Notice No. 129 of 18 February 2011 (Government Gazette No. 34032 of 18 February 2011); and
- (b) Ministerial Determination 4: Expanded Public Works Programmes, issued in terms of the Basic Conditions of Employment Act of 1997 by the Minister of Labour in Government Notice No. R347 of 4 May 2012.

The aforementioned Government Notice No. R347 contains the standard terms and conditions for workers employed in elementary occupations on an Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). These terms and conditions do not apply to persons employed in the supervision and management of an Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).

The above documents can be downloaded from the EPWP website of the Department of Public Works (<http://www.epwp.gov.za/>).

## **F2.3 Persons to be employed under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)**

All local labour required for the execution of labour-enhanced works shall be engaged strictly in accordance with prevailing legislation.

The Contractor shall, through the Project Liaison Committee (PLC) and with the assistance of the Community Liaison Officer (CLO), inform the local community of the labour-enhanced works proposed and the employment opportunities thereby presented.

The Contractor shall determine the minimum education level / skills required to undertake the works specified. In consultation with the PLC and the War Room convener for each relevant ward, selection of the local labour shall be made from households on the Operation Sukuma Sakhe (OSS) database profiled through the War Room for each ward. The list obtained from the OSS database must be accompanied by a letter from the War Room convener confirming that all the information provided was sourced from the War Room and that all listed incumbents reside within the relevant ward. The Contractor must maintain records of household profiles as part of the portfolio of evidence for selection. Selection shall be based on the minimum education level / skills required and the most-needy households, as determined by the household profiling. Preference shall be given for at least one person from each household in the community to be employed before further persons are considered for selection.

The Contractor shall endeavour to ensure that the number of temporary jobs using local labour (unskilled or semi-skilled), recruited from the local community, who are South African Citizens or foreigners in possession of a work visa issued by the Department of Home Affairs (only one such foreigner may be employed on any project), shall include for a minimum allocation of:

- (a) 60% women;
- (b) 55% youth who are between the ages of 18 and 35; and
- (c) 2% persons with disabilities.

All labour recruitment, employment and associated risks shall remain the sole responsibility of the contractor.

The contractor shall comply with the minimum supervisor to worker ratio stated below, required to ensure the effective supervision of the labour-enhanced works for all LI activities undertaken on this project:

Minimum supervisor to worker ratio = 1:10

#### **F2.4 Contract of employment with persons employed under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)**

The Contractor shall enter into a formal contract of employment with each person employed under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP), using the pro forma contract of employment attached at the end of this Part F of section 3.3 Particular Specifications.

The Contractor shall note that all such formal contracts of employment entered into with persons employed under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) shall expire on 31 March each year, and the Contractor shall therefore be required to enter into new contracts with such persons as of 1 April each year.

#### **F2.5 Employment of targeted labour under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)**

The Contractor shall be contractually obliged to:

- (a) brief EPWP workers on the conditions of employment;
- (b) enter into a formal contract of employment with each EPWP worker, which contract will form part of the Employment Agreement;
- (c) keep personnel files for all EPWP workers and make copies available to the Employer if and when requested; and
- (d) ensure that payments to EPWP workers are made in accordance with Government Notice No. R347.

The rate of pay for persons employed under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) shall be the gazetted rate:

- (i) per task (for task-rated workers); or
- (ii) per day (for time-rated workers).

During those periods when an EPWP worker is engaged in formal classroom training (other than in-service training), the rate of pay shall be equal to the minimum wage rate as set on an annual basis in the Ministerial Determination for the Expanded Public Works Programme.

Tasks set by the Contractor shall be such that:

- (a) the average EPWP worker completes 5 tasks per week in 40 hours or less; and
- (b) the weakest EPWP worker completes 5 tasks per week in 55 hours or less.

The Contractor shall revise the time taken to complete a task whenever it is established that the time taken per week to complete the tasks set does not fall within the limits indicated in (a) and (b) above.

#### **F2.6 Training of persons employed under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)**

The training of persons employed under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) is described in clause F4 below.

## **F2.7 Contractor's obligations towards persons employed under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)**

Over and above implementing in accordance with Government Notice Nos. 129 and R347 the EPWP work to be undertaken on this contract, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to carry out the following functions with respect to the EPWP workers:

- (a) ensure that all participants are covered by the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993, for as long as they are contracted to the Contractor, and pay in full to the Compensation Commissioner such amounts as are due in terms of the Act;
- (b) pay in full to the Unemployment Insurance Fund for all participants such UIF contribution amounts as are due in terms of the Unemployment Insurance Act, 2001, as amended, and the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002, as amended, and provide proof of such UIF payments upon request;
- (c) ensure that all participants are paid their wages on time through the pre-agreed payment method as stipulated in the participant contract of employment;
- (d) implement health and safety procedures with respect to the participants, ensuring that the health and safety regulations are adhered to;
- (e) ensure that all participants receive induction on site safety prior to commencing with work on site;
- (f) provide all participants with the necessary protective clothing and equipment as required by law for the specific tasks in which the participants are involved, in addition to the branded overalls stipulated for EPWP workers;
- (g) provide safe on-site storage facilities for apparel and tools issued to the participants;
- (h) assist in the assessment of participants with regard to their competencies;
- (i) provide overall supervision and day-to-day management of participants; and
- (j) implement strict quality control to ensure that the work carried out by the participants is of the required standard, and, where necessary, to train and mentor the participants to assist them in achieving the standards required.

## **F2.8 Apparel and tools for persons employed under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP)**

The Contractor shall provide Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) to all EPWP workers in accordance with the requirements arising from Part E: OHS 1993 Health and Safety Specification and the Contractor's site-specific health and safety plan and accompanying risk assessments.

Where indicated below, certain items of the PPE issued by the Contractor to the EPWP workers shall include branded EPWP markings in accordance with the attached branding requirements.

PPE shall comprise the following:

- (a) Compulsory PPE issued to all EPWP workers for use during general work activities:
  - (i) Protective overalls (two sets), green in colour, with EPWP branding;
  - (ii) Lime green reflective safety vest with EPWP branding;
  - (iii) Protective footwear; and
  - (iv) Protective gloves.
- (b) PPE issued to EPWP workers for specific activities where required in terms of the Contractor's site-specific health and safety plan and accompanying risk assessments, such as:
  - (i) Protective headwear, green in colour, with EPWP branding;
  - (ii) Protective eyewear such as spectacles and goggles;
  - (iii) Protective face shields;
  - (iv) Protective earplugs and earmuffs;
  - (v) Respiratory masks;
  - (vi) Disposable safety apparel;
  - (vii) Kidney belts;
  - (viii) Safety harnesses; and
  - (ix) Any other protective equipment identified.

The Contractor shall replace any item of issued PPE that becomes unserviceable.  
The Contractor shall not charge any fee to the EPWP workers for the prescribed PPE issued except under the following circumstances:

- (i) where the employee requests the issue of additional PPE in excess of what is prescribed;
- (ii) where the employee has patently abused or neglected the issued PPE leading to early failure;  
or
- (iii) where the employee has lost the issued PPE.

The Contractor shall instruct and train the EPWP workers in the use of all PPE issued, and shall ensure that they use the prescribed equipment.

EPWP workers shall not have the right to refuse to use or wear the equipment prescribed by the Contractor. If it is not possible for an EPWP worker, through health or any other reason, to use or wear the prescribed PPE issued, such employee shall not be allowed to continue working under the hazardous conditions for which the equipment was prescribed. Under such circumstances an alternative solution shall be found, and this may include relocating or discharging the employee.

The Contractor shall provide each EPWP worker with hand tools of adequate quality and of the type required to carry out the assigned tasks safely and efficiently.

The Contractor shall instruct and train the EPWP workers in the safe and efficient use of all hand tools issued.

The Contractor shall maintain the issued tools in a serviceable and safe working condition.

The EPWP workers shall be responsible for the safe on-site storage of all PPE and tools issued to them, using the storage facilities provided on site by the Contractor.

No separate payment shall be made for providing the EPWP workers with PPE, or for providing relevant items of PPE in the specified colours with branded EPWP markings. Furthermore, no separate payment shall be made for providing the EPWP workers with hand tools or for providing them with safe storage facilities on site for PPE and tools. The Contractor shall therefore make provision for all costs related to providing the PPE, tools and safe storage facilities in the tendered rates and prices for the various items of work scheduled throughout the bill of quantities.

## **F2.9 EPWP contract signboard**

The Contractor will be required to erect a contract signboard displaying the EPWP logo, indicating that this project is part of the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). Provision for the costs related to the provision, erection and subsequent removal of the contract signboard is made in pay item provided in chapter 1.3 of the bill of quantities for this purpose.

## **F2.10 Payment matters relating to the EPWP work**

### **F2.10.1 General**

No separate pay items shall be provided in terms of Part F of the bill of quantities for the construction work activities carried out by EPWP participants. Payment for such work activities shall be made only indirectly, in terms of the pay items scheduled for the work activities in which such persons are engaged.

Furthermore, no direct payment will be made to cover the Contractor's costs associated with implementing the on-site work programme for the EPWP participants, for planning, organising, directing, controlling and administrating their day to day activities, including the setting of daily tasks, record keeping and any on-site liaison, training and mentoring required, and for the associated job creation reporting, and such costs shall therefore be built into the rates tendered for the various items of work scheduled throughout the bill of quantities.

## **F2.10.2 Payment for labour-enhanced components of the work**

Payment will be made for items which are designated for labour-enhanced construction in the bill of quantities only in those instances where such items are constructed using labour-enhanced methods.

Any unauthorised use of construction equipment to carry out work which was scheduled to be carried out using labour-enhanced methods will not be condoned and any Works so constructed will not be certified for payment. Any non-payment for such Works shall not relieve the Contractor in any way from his obligations either in contract or in delict.

During the course of construction, as a result of unforeseen site conditions or operating conditions encountered, it may happen that an item designated for labour-enhanced construction can no longer be carried out in a safe and economically feasible manner, either in full or in part, using labour-enhanced methods. In such instances the Employer's Agent shall, where necessary, order a variation in terms of clause 13.3 of the of the FIDIC Silver Book 2017 with respect to that portion of the item quantity that cannot be carried out using labour-enhanced methods.

## **F2.11 Penalty applicable to any shortfall in the local labour content achieved**

The amount spent on wages for local labour (excluding VAT) for this project, as certified by the Employer's Agent, shall equal or exceed the specified minimum percentage of the contract amount which is the Contract Price (adjusted to exclude penalties and value added tax).

The Contractor is obliged to commit to or exceed the specified minimum percentage of local labour content stated in section C1.2.2 Data Provided by the Employer.

In the event that the Contractor fails to substantiate that any failure to achieve the minimum required local labour content for this project is due to quantitative underruns, the elimination of items contracted to local labour, or any other reason beyond the Contractor's control which may be acceptable to the Employer, the Contractor shall be liable for a financial penalty as prescribed in clause SCC 4.1.1 of section C1.2.1.2 Special Conditions of Contract. The financial penalty shall be calculated as follows:

$$P = 0,05 \times [(E - E_0)/100] \times C_A$$

where:

- E is the specified minimum percentage for local labour content
- E<sub>0</sub> is the local labour content percentage which the Employer's Agent certifies as being achieved upon completion of the contract
- C<sub>A</sub> is the contract amount which is the Contract Price (adjusted to exclude penalties and value added tax)
- P is the monetary value of penalty payable

The penalty shall not apply to shortfalls in the allocations to the individual target groups (i.e., Women/Youth/Disabled as per clause F1.3 above), only to shortfalls in the total local labour content achieved.

The evaluation of the Contractor's achievement of the local labour content percentage shall be undertaken monthly by the Employer's Agent, based on the accumulative achievements in comparison to the programmed utilisation of local labour, as a means of monitoring the Contractor's performance in achieving the Contract Participation Goal.

Failure by the Contractor to achieve the Contract Participation Goal target by the time of Practical Completion, shall result in the financial penalty being applied as prescribed in this clause. The Employer's Agent shall make a final determination of the Contractor's achievement of the Contract Participation Goal based on the value of the Final Payment Certificate.

### **F3. NATIONAL YOUTH SERVICE (NYS)**

The Employer requires the implementation of National Youth Service (NYS) programmes on this project.

#### **F3.1 The National Youth Service (NYS) programme**

The National Youth Service (NYS) programme aims to train young people and provide them with practical work experience. The young people will be allocated tasks by the Contractor that will assist the Contractor with the execution of the contract.

#### **F3.2 Applicable labour laws**

The work to be undertaken on this contract by unskilled or semi-skilled workers under the National Youth Service (NYS) programme shall be implemented in accordance with the same Code of Good Practice and Ministerial Determination as described in clause F2.2 above for work to be undertaken under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).

#### **F3.3 Employer's project manager**

The Contractor shall be required to liaise closely with the Employer's project manager who is responsible for the recruitment and training of the NYS workers.

#### **F3.4 Persons to be employed under the NYS programme**

For purposes of this contract, the Contractor shall be required to employ 60 youths aged between 18 and 35 for a period of 6 months each under the NYS programme.

The Employer's project manager shall provide the Contractor with a list of the 60 youths to be employed and the training that each of these 60 youths have received to date, and only these 60 youths shall be employed by the Contractor under the NYS programme.

#### **F3.5 Contract of employment with persons employed under the NYS programme**

The Contractor shall enter into a formal contract of employment with each youth employed under the NYS programme, using the pro forma contract of employment attached at the end of this Part F of section 3.3 Particular Specifications.

#### **F3.6 Employment of NYS workers**

The Contractor will be contractually obliged to:

- (a) employ all participants on the list provided by the Employer's project manager;
- (b) brief NYS workers on the conditions of employment;
- (c) enter into a formal contract of employment with each NYS worker, which contract will form part of the Employment Agreement;
- (d) keep personnel files for all NYS workers and make copies available to the Employer's project manager if and when requested; and
- (e) ensure that payments to NYS workers are made in accordance with Government Notice No. R347.

During the period when they are engaged in formal classroom training (other than in-service training), the youths employed under the NYS programme shall be paid the minimum wage rate as set by the Department of Labour on an annual basis in the Ministerial Determination for the Expanded Public Works Programme, and should there be an upward adjustment in the rate the Contractor will be compensated accordingly. During the period when they are engaged in productive work activities required for elements of the Works, they shall be paid in terms of the wage rates stated in clause F2.5 above.

### **F3.7 Training of youth workers**

All NYS workers will be placed on an extensive training programme that will include:

- (a) an induction into NYS and EPWP;
- (b) life skills training;
- (c) technical training focusing on a vocational skill to be used on the project (e.g. painting or carpentry); and
- (d) entrepreneurship and business skills training.

All training will be arranged by the Employer's project manager, with whom the Contractor will be required to work closely to schedule the training sessions so that the timing of the training is aligned with the Contractor's work schedule and his demand for workers with specific skills. The Employer's project manager will make full details of the training programme available to the Contractor.

A compulsory 10-day life skills training must be provided before commencement of classroom training on NYS. This type of training must be provided by a NYDA accredited service provider as per the National Youth Service Framework from the National Department of Public Works.

The Contractor shall maintain comprehensive records of the training received by each NYS worker throughout the course of the contract, and shall submit to the Employer at each monthly site meeting a summary of the accumulated training received by each NYS worker.

The training of the NYS workers shall take place using the same training facility provided for the training of all other EPWP participants (refer to clause F5 below).

### **F3.8 Contractor's obligations towards persons employed under the NYS programme**

Over and above implementing in accordance with Government Notice Nos. 129 and R347 the NYS programme work to be undertaken on this contract, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to carry out the following functions with respect to the NYS programme workers:

- (a) ensure that all participants are covered by the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993, for as long as they are contracted to the Contractor, and pay in full to the Compensation Commissioner such amounts as are due in terms of the Act;
- (b) pay in full to the Unemployment Insurance Fund for all participants such UIF contribution amounts as are due in terms of the Unemployment Insurance Act, 2001, as amended, and the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002, as amended, and provide proof of such UIF payments upon request;
- (c) ensure that all participants are paid their wages on time through the pre-agreed payment method as stipulated in the participant contract;
- (d) implement health and safety procedures with respect to the participants, ensuring that the health and safety regulations are adhered to;
- (e) ensure that all participants receive induction on site safety prior to commencing with work on site;
- (f) provide all participants with the necessary protective clothing and equipment as required by law for the specific trades in which the participants are involved, in addition to the branded overalls stipulated for NYS workers;
- (g) provide safe on-site storage facilities for apparel and tools issued to the participants;
- (h) assist in the assessment of participants with regard to their competencies in their respective trades;
- (i) provide overall supervision and day-to-day management of participants; and
- (j) implement strict quality control to ensure that the work carried out by the participants is of the required standard, and, where necessary, to train and mentor the participants to assist them in achieving the standards required.

### **F3.9 Apparel and tools for NYS workers**

The content of clause F2.8 above with regard to apparel and tools for EPWP workers shall apply equally to NYS workers, except that:

- (a) apparel and tools to be issued to NYS workers shall be determined in conjunction with the Employer's project manager;
- (b) the required branding of apparel to be issued to NYS workers shall be determined in conjunction with the Employer's project manager, and shall also include the NYS logo;
- (c) additional PPE may be required depending on the NYS worker's specific trade;
- (d) certain specified apparel and tools issued to the NYS workers will become the property of the NYS workers after the completion of their cycle of work on the project, in order to enable them to continue to practise their trade on future projects. Such apparel and tools shall be specified and authorised by the Employer's Agent; and
- (e) separate payment items have been provided in Part F of the bill of quantities to cover all costs associated with the provision of the necessary tools and apparel, including safety apparel, for the NYS workers, and the facilities for the safe storage thereof, all as authorised by the Employer's Agent.

### **F3.10 EPWP-NYS contract signboard**

Where work takes place under the National Youth Service (NYS) programme, the NYS logo shall also be displayed on the EPWP contract signboard referred to in clause F2.9 above, indicating that this project is part of both the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and the NYS programme. Provision for the costs related to the provision, erection and subsequent removal of the contract signboard in the pay item provided in chapter 1.3 of the bill of quantities for this purpose.

### **F3.11 Payment matters relating to the NYS work**

No direct payment will be made to cover the Contractor's costs associated with implementing the on-site work programme for the NYS workers, for planning, organising, directing, controlling and administrating their day to day activities, including the setting of daily tasks, record keeping and any on-site liaison, training and mentoring required, and for the associated job creation reporting, and such costs shall therefore be built into the rates tendered for the various items of work scheduled throughout the bill of quantities.

## **F4. JOB CREATION REPORTING FOR EPWP**

In order to assist the Employer in complying with the goal of creating EPWP job opportunities, the Contractor must provide the information specified in clause F4.1 below for reporting purposes.

In addition, the Contractor's payment certificates shall be accompanied by the information specified in clause F4.2 below.

### **F4.1 Type of project data required per project**

Every EPWP project shall collect and keep specific project data for the purpose of EPWP progress reporting on a monthly basis, using the EPWP Data Collection Tool template (this will be made available to the Contractor in Microsoft Excel format - refer to the pro forma spreadsheets at the end of this Part F of the Particular Specifications).

The data that is required to be kept, maintained and reported on a monthly basis for each project includes:



#### **F4.1.1 Participant (local labour) data**

A participant list of the local labour employed must be maintained for every EPWP project. The data required in this participant list is indicated below. This data shall be recorded, checked and signed off by the Contractor, and shall be submitted to the Employer at each monthly site meeting. The participant list shall contain the following data and shall be kept and maintained on site for audit purposes:

- (a) Participant identity – name, surname, initials, date of birth and identity number (or other unique identifier) plus certified copy of ID book.
- (b) Participant profiles – nationality, gender, age, education level and disability status.
- (c) Work data for participants – daily wage to be received, number of calendar days training attended and number of calendar days worked.
- (d) Records of training – as required in terms of the EPWP Data Collection Tool template.

In addition, the signed contracts of employment between the Contractor and each EPWP participant shall be kept and maintained on site for audit purposes.

#### **F4.1.2 Project work data**

The project work data generally seeks to confirm the number of people at work daily on the project. This data shall be recorded, checked and signed off by the Contractor, and shall be submitted to the Employer at each monthly site meeting. The data shall be maintained on site by the Contractor, in order that it can be provided by the Employer to the National Department of Public Works upon request when the latter is undertaking sample auditing. These records shall be kept by the Contractor for a period of three years after contract completion should they be required for audit purposes.

The data shall include:

- (a) Daily attendance register – register for each day showing all the workers that were registered as being at work on that day. Attendance registers shall be completed on site on a daily basis and signed off by the Contractor on a weekly basis. Refer to pro forma attendance register attached at the end of this Part F of section 3.3.
- (b) Summary of monthly attendance.

#### **F4.1.3 Project payment data**

The project payment data generally seeks to confirm what was paid, for how much work and to whom. This data shall be recorded, checked and signed off by the Contractor, and shall be submitted to the Employer at each monthly site meeting.

It is required that the Contractor adopt one of the following methods as standard procedure for recording and maintaining this information:

- (a) Payment register – this is a list of the workers showing the wages paid to each worker, and signed off by each worker as proof of receipt and acceptance of payment. Information on this register must include the name of the worker, either an identity number or other unique identifier, the number of calendar days that the pay period covers, the wage rate and the total wages paid; or
- (b) Bank records showing the transfers to each worker account, signed off by the Contractor as proof of payment – these bank records must specifically show the name of the worker, either an identity number or other unique identifier, the period which the pay covers and the total wages paid.

The project payment data, as recorded and maintained by the Contractor in terms of either (a) or (b) above, must be available and applicable for the entire period for which the Employer claims an incentive reward for person-days of work created in terms of the project.

#### **F4.1.4 Employment output data**

The Contractor shall submit to the Employer at each monthly site meeting a progress report detailing production output compared to the programme of works, together with the data necessary to enable the Employer to calculate the following employment output data in accordance with the EPWP Data Collection Tool template:

- (a) Number of work opportunities created (where one work opportunity = paid work created for one individual on an EPWP project, for any period of time).
- (b) Number of person-days of work created (where one person-day = one day of work carried out by one individual). The total number of person-days of work created on a particular EPWP project shall be obtained by summing the total number of person-days worked by each individual employed during the course of that EPWP project.
- (c) Number of Full Time Equivalents (FTE) created (= total number of person-days of work created on the EPWP project divided by 230 working days). In terms of EPWP policy, one year of work created for one individual is assumed to comprise a total of 230 days of paid work carried out by that individual.
- (d) Average duration of work opportunities created (= total number of person-days of work created on the EPWP project divided by the number of work opportunities created on that EPWP project).
- (e) Average daily wage rates paid (= accumulated total of the wages paid to all individuals employed on an EPWP project divided by the total number of person-days of work created on that EPWP project).
- (f) Training information.

#### **F4.2 Project data to be submitted with the Contractor's payment certificates**

The Contractor's payment certificates shall be accompanied by labour returns providing the labour information for the corresponding period in a format specified by the Employer.

Should the Contractor choose to delay submitting payment certificates, the labour returns shall nevertheless still be submitted as per the frequency and timeframes stipulated by the Employer. The Contractor's payment certificates shall not be paid by the Employer until all pending labour information has been submitted.

The following information shall be maintained on site and submitted with each payment certificate in the format specified by the Employer:

- (a) Copies of the signed contracts between the Contractor and any new EPWP participants (the Contractor shall note that all such formal contracts of employment entered into with persons employed under the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) shall expire on 31 March each year, and the Contractor shall therefore be required to enter into new contracts with such persons as of 1 April each year, and shall be required to submit copies of all such new contracts with the first payment certificate thereafter);
- (b) Certified ID copies of all local labour employed as EPWP participants;
- (c) Attendance registers for the EPWP participants;
- (d) Proof of payment of EPWP participants; and
- (e) Information as required in terms of the EPWP Data Collection Tool template.

### **F5. PROVISION OF STRUCTURED TRAINING**

#### **F5.1 Scope of structured training**

In order to avoid duplication of training facilities, the training described in Part G: Small Contractor Development (in those instances where Part G is included in the contract), shall be provided utilising the training facility measured and paid for in accordance with the requirements of this Part F: Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).

The Employer's objectives include the training of local labour and Targeted Enterprises within a structured programme, in order to equip them with skills that will assist them in gaining future employment, and to facilitate targeted EPWP participants in gaining competencies and unit standard credits towards future full learnership qualifications.

Such training shall contain both theoretical and practical components and shall be conducted in accordance with the various laws and regulations contained in the South African Qualifications Authority (SAQA) statutes.

The following aspects of the structured training to be provided are noted:

- (a) The Employer has no service agreement or memorandum of understanding with any Education and Training Quality Assurance (ETQA) body, and therefore does not function as the employer as defined under any three-party learnership agreement between the learner, the training provider and the employer.
- (b) The structured training programmes implemented on this contract, although comprising several unit standards, are unlikely to total to sufficient credits for a full learnership qualification. Nevertheless, the competencies and credits achieved should contribute to a full learnership through the later acquisition by the learner of the remaining unit standards required for the full learnership.

The Contractor shall be required to provide a training facility on the Site, or in close proximity thereto, and to provide over the duration of the contract the following structured training for EPWP participants:

- (a) Generic skills training;
- (b) Entrepreneurial skills training;
- (c) Construction skills training; and
- (d) In-service training.

Generic skills training and in-service training shall be provided to all EPWP participants.

Entrepreneurial and construction skills training shall be provided to targeted EPWP participants only.

#### **F5.2 Training provider and trainers**

The Contractor shall be required to procure the services of a training provider accredited by the Construction Education and Training Authority (CETA).

The training provider shall have in its employ trainers who are registered as assessors with the Construction Education and Training Authority (CETA), and who shall deliver the training.

Proof of the accreditation of the service provider and the registration of the trainers by the CETA shall be submitted to the Employer's Agent. Such accreditation and registration shall be current and valid, and the proof submitted shall include the NQF levels and unit standards for which each trainer is accredited.

#### **F5.3 Skills analysis and selection of targeted EPWP participants**

Studying for any learnership requires minimum literacy and numeracy competencies as defined by SAQA. The actual literacy and numeracy levels of the persons employed on the Site shall provide a basis to guide the Contractor and the training provider on how to conduct the selection process.

The Contractor shall therefore conduct a skills analysis of the local labour and Targeted Enterprises employed, in order to determine the formal education qualifications of each employee.

The Contractor, in conjunction with the training provider, shall then identify those persons that display the potential to benefit from such structured entrepreneurial and construction skills training as may be provided for in the contract, and shall make recommendations in this regard to the Employer's Agent.

The final candidates selected for such training shall be decided between the Contractor and the Employer's Agent (or by the Project Management Team (PMT) in the case of training for Targeted Enterprises in terms of Part G: Small Contractor Development, where applicable).

#### F5.4 Structured training programmes

The Contractor, supported by the training provider, shall plan then implement structured training programmes for generic, entrepreneurial and construction skills training.

Training courses shall commence within four months of the Contractor taking possession of the Site, and shall be completed before the Due Completion Date.

All training shall take place within normal working hours, or as otherwise agreed with the learners.

The training provider shall design, compile and deliver the structured training programmes, based on the information obtained from the skills analysis.

##### F5.4.1 Generic skills training

The structured training programmes designed by the training provider for the generic skills training shall comprise relevant general courses such as basic hygiene and HIV/AIDS awareness, first aid, road safety, managing personal finance, and other courses that would be useful to workers in the road construction industry or as life skills generally.

##### F5.4.2 Entrepreneurial skills training

The structured training programmes designed by the training provider for the entrepreneurial skills training shall comprise unit standards that contribute towards one or more of the following full learnership qualifications, as appropriate taking into consideration the skills analysis information for the selected candidates (details of the learnership qualifications and the applicable unit standards may be found on the website [www.saqa.org.za](http://www.saqa.org.za)):

<b>ENTREPRENEURIAL SKILLS TRAINING</b>				
<b>Qualification title</b>	<b>SAQA qualification ID</b>	<b>NQF level</b>	<b>Minimum credits</b>	<b>Purpose of qualification</b>
National Certificate: Supervision of Construction Processes	49053	Level 4	176	Learners found competent against this qualification will be able to execute the supervision of construction processes, with specialisation in a specific context

### F5.4.3 Construction skills training

The structured training programmes designed by the training provider for the construction skills training shall comprise unit standards that contribute towards one or more of the following full learnership qualifications, as appropriate taking into consideration the skills analysis information for the selected candidates (details of the learnership qualifications and the applicable unit standards may be found on the website [www.saqa.org.za](http://www.saqa.org.za)):

<b>CONSTRUCTION SKILLS TRAINING</b>				
<b>Qualification title</b>	<b>SAQA qualification ID</b>	<b>NQF level</b>	<b>Minimum credits</b>	<b>Purpose of qualification</b>
National Certificate: Supervision of Construction Processes	49053	Level 4	176	Learners found competent against this qualification will be able to execute the supervision of construction processes, with specialisation in a specific context
National Certificate: Construction: Roadworks	24173	Level 3	155	This qualification is for persons who work or intend to work within a construction context on a site, and who seek recognition for essential skills in construction operations in roadworks.
National Certificate: Construction: Roadworks	24133	Level 2	120	This qualification is for persons who work or intend to work within a construction context on a site, and who seek recognition for essential skills in construction operations in roadworks.
National Certificate: Occupational Health, Safety and Environment	74269	Level 2	120	This qualification is to equip learners working in any type of workplace with a broad understanding and knowledge of Occupational Health, Safety and Environmental (HSE) concepts and practices with sufficient detail to enable them to function in a safe and healthy way and to deal with health and safety problems and issues.

#### **F5.4.4 Training programme**

The Contractor's proposed training programmes shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent (or the approval of the Project Management Team (PMT) in the case of training for Targeted Enterprises in terms of Part G: Small Contractor Development, where applicable), and the Contractor shall, if so instructed by the Employer's Agent or the PMT, alter or amend the programmes and the course content to meet any additional needs identified.

The Contractor shall be responsible for everything necessary for the delivery of the training programmes, including:

- (a) the provision of the trainers;
- (b) the provision of a suitable secure venue, complete with adequate furniture, lighting, air conditioning, power and ablution facilities;
- (c) the provision of all necessary stationery, consumables and study materials;
- (d) the transportation of the learners to and from the training facility;
- (e) the payment of wages to all learners during the classroom training at a rate equal to the minimum wage rate as set on an annual basis in the Ministerial Determination for the Expanded Public Works Programme;
- (f) the provision of any relevant Personal Protective Equipment (PPE) required for the training; and
- (g) additional supervision of the learners during the practical learning stage of the training carried out by constructing relevant elements of the Works (wages for the learners during this stage of the training will be paid through the rates tendered for the relevant scheduled work items for those elements).

At the successful completion of each course, the Contractor's training provider shall, as proof of attendance and completion, issue each learner with a certificate indicating the course content.

The training provider shall also ensure that each unit standard contributing towards a full learnership qualification and successfully completed by the learner is entered onto the national database.

The Contractor shall keep comprehensive records of the training given to each learner and the certificates issued, and shall provide copies of such records to the Employer's Agent when required.

The Contractor shall also complete and submit to the Employer's Agent each month, in a format acceptable to the Employer (using the EPWP Data Collection Tool template), a return detailing the training provided, both for the month and cumulatively for the contract.

#### **F5.5 In-service training**

The Contractor shall, from the commencement of the contract, implement an in-service training programme in which the various skills required for the execution and completion of the Works are imparted to the EPWP participants engaged thereon.

Throughout the duration of the contract, the EPWP participants shall be trained progressively through the various stages of each particular type of work in which they are engaged, and their work shall be supervised and monitored and their methods corrected where necessary.

The in-service training programme shall be submitted with the initial Works programme. The Contractor shall record the progress in relation to this programme on a monthly basis, and this progress report shall be incorporated in the monthly site meeting minutes and the payment certificate.

The Contractor shall provide sufficient skilled and competent trainers to train all EPWP participants engaged on the contract in the various skills required to enable them to carry out the required construction activities.

The in-service training of EPWP participants shall take place before commencement of the relevant construction activity, and the Contractor shall take into account in his programme the lead time required for such training. All in-service training shall be deemed to be an element of the relevant construction activity.

All formal in-service training shall be documented in terms of the EPWP Data Collection Tool template, and shall be accompanied by an attendance register of the EPWP participants on the applicable days.

All EPWP participants shall be remunerated at their agreed wage rate in respect of the time spent undergoing in-service training. The cost of the Contractor's in-service training obligations shall be deemed to be covered by the sums and rates tendered for items B13.01(a), (b) and (c) in the bill of quantities.

On termination of their employment, the Contractor shall provide each EPWP participant engaged on the contract with a certificate of service on which the following information shall be recorded:

- (i) name of the Contractor;
- (ii) name of the project / contract;
- (iii) name of the employee;
- (iv) nature of the work satisfactorily executed by the EPWP participant and the time spent thereon;
- (v) nature and extent of training provided to the EPWP participant; and
- (vi) dates of service.

#### **F5.6 Training venue facility**

The training venue facility to be provided by the Contractor shall be constructed, furnished and fully serviced for the duration of the contract in accordance with Chapter 1.4 of the Standard Specifications for Road and Bridge Works for South African Road Authorities (COTO), Draft Standard (DS), October 2020.

In order to minimise the cost of transporting the learners for training, the facility shall be located in secure premises on the Site, or in close proximity thereto.

This facility shall be used to deliver all training, irrespective of whether it is delivered in terms of Part E or Part F of the Particular Specifications.

The facility shall accommodate a class of up to 20 learners and shall comprise the following:

(a)	Lecture room (interior area)	=	48 m <sup>2</sup>
(b)	Ablutions (male)	=	6 m <sup>2</sup>
(c)	Ablutions (female)	=	6 m <sup>2</sup>
(d)	Chairs for learners (individual chairs, with backs)	=	25 off
(e)	Desk area for 25 learners (500 mm width)	=	12,5 m <sup>2</sup>
(f)	Chairs for trainers and management (individual chairs, with backs)	=	5 off
(g)	Table area for trainers and management	=	3 m <sup>2</sup>
(h)	220/250 volt power points	=	6 off
(i)	Double 80 watt fluorescent light fittings complete with ballast and tubes	=	6 off
(j)	Single incandescent light fittings complete with 100 watt globes	=	4 off
(k)	Wash hand basins complete with taps and drains	=	4 off
(l)	Fire extinguishers, 9,0 kg, all-purpose dry powder type, complete, mounted on wall with brackets	=	2 off
(m)	Air conditioning units with 2,2 kW minimum capacity, mounted and with own power connection	=	4 off
(n)	Voltage stabilizers	=	2 off
(o)	Floodlights complete with poles and 500 watt minimum globes and controlled by photocells	=	2 off
(p)	White boards (3 m x 1,5 m)	=	1 off
(q)	Venetian blinds	=	12 m <sup>2</sup>

**F6. MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT**

<b>Item</b>	<b>Unit</b>
<b>F6.01 Provision of the training venue facility, including the cost of transporting the learners to and from this facility .....</b>	lump sum (Sum)

The tendered lump sum for subitem F6.01 shall include full compensation for the provision of the training venue facility complete and serviced as specified, including for the provision of power, water, sewerage and cleaning services for the duration of the contract, for lighting, power points and voltage stabilizers, for air conditioning, blinds, fire extinguishers, floodlights, furniture and whiteboards, for the provision of security at the facility, for all other costs necessary to maintain the facility for the duration of the contract, and for the removal of the facility on completion of the contract.

The tendered lump sum shall also include full compensation for transporting the learners on each day of training from their place of work to this training venue facility, and back again after the training for the day has been delivered by the accredited trainers.

Payment of the lump sum shall be made in three instalments as follows:

The first instalment, 50% of the lump sum, shall be paid after the Contractor has met all his obligations regarding the provision of the training venue facility, complete and serviced as specified, and the facility has been successfully commissioned for use.

The second instalment, 35% of the lump sum, shall be paid when 75% of the training courses proposed in accordance with the Contractor's approved structured training programme have been delivered to the learners by the accredited trainers.

The third and final instalment, 15% of the lump sum, shall be paid when all training has been concluded and the facility has been dismantled and removed from the site.

<b>Item</b>	<b>Unit</b>
<b>F6.02 Training of learners employed by the contractor or by the Targeted Enterprise subcontractors:</b>	
(a) Generic skills:	
(i) Training costs .....	amount
(ii) Handling costs and profit in respect of subitem F6.02(a)(i) .....	percentage (%)
(b) Entrepreneurial skills:	
(i) Training costs .....	amount
(ii) Handling costs and profit in respect of subitem F6.02(b)(i) .....	amount
(c) Construction skills:	
(i) Training costs .....	amount
(ii) Handling costs and profit in respect of subitem F6.02(c)(i) .....	percentage (%)
(d) Transportation and accommodation costs of selected learners only, while receiving off-site training:	
(i) Transportation and accommodation costs .....	amount
(ii) Handling costs and profit in respect of subitem F6.02(d)(i) .....	percentage (%)



The amount for each of subitems F6.02(a)(i), (b)(i) and (c)(i) is provided to cover the total costs of the required training in generic, entrepreneurial and construction skills respectively, including for the procurement of the services of the accredited trainers and their delivery of the training courses to the learners, the provision of all training materials including all stationery and study materials, the wages of the learners for the duration of the courses including the associated COIDA and UIF payments, and the provision of any tools and PPE that may be required during those courses incorporating practical training modules. The payment of wages to learners in terms of subitems F6.02(a)(i), (b)(i) and (c)(i) will only be made to those learners who attend and successfully complete each course of the approved training programme. Payment shall not be made to learners who, once selected, do not attend or only partially complete structured training courses.

The tendered percentage for each of subitems F6.02(a)(ii), (b)(ii) and (c)(ii) is the percentage of the amount actually spent under each of subitems F6.02(a)(i), (b)(i) and (c)(i) respectively, and shall include full compensation for the handling costs of the Contractor and the profit in connection with the provision of the training in generic, entrepreneurial and construction skills respectively, including for the costs of record keeping and reporting with respect to the training received by each learner.

The amount for subitem F6.02(d)(i) is provided to cover all costs related to the transportation and accommodation costs of selected learners only, while receiving off-site training, where such learners have been specifically selected to receive such off-site training and where such training cannot be delivered using the training venue facility provided by the Contractor in terms of subitem F6.01.

The tendered percentage for subitem F6.02(d)(ii) is the percentage of the amount actually spent under subitem F6.02(d)(i), and shall include full compensation for the handling costs of the Contractor and the profit in connection with the transportation and accommodation costs of selected learners only, while receiving off-site training.

<b>Item</b>	<b>Unit</b>
<b>F6.03</b>	<b>Payments associated with the NYS programme:</b>
(a) Employment of NYS workers .....	amount
(b) Provision of tools and apparel for the NYS workers .....	amount
(c) Handling costs and profit in respect of subitems F6.03(a) and (b) .....	percentage (%)
(d) Training of NYS workers:	
(i) Provision of training for NYS workers .....	amount
(ii) Handling costs and profit in respect of subitem F6.03(d)(i) .....	percentage (%)
(e) Liaison with the Employer's project manager and the training service provider:	
(i) Liaison conducted by the Construction Manager .....	hour (h)
(ii) Liaison conducted by the senior site foreman.....	hour (h)

The amount under subitem F6.03(a) shall be used to cover the cost of employment payments made by the Contractor to the NYS workers, including the associated COIDA and UIF payments, all as authorised by the Employer's Agent.

The amount under subitem F6.03(b) shall be used to cover all costs associated with the provision of the necessary tools and apparel, including safety apparel, for the NYS workers, and the facilities for the safe storage thereof, all as authorised by the Employer's Agent.

The tendered percentage under subitem F6.03(c) is a percentage of the total amount of expenditure approved by the Employer's Agent under the amount subitems F6.03(a) and (b), and shall include full compensation for attendance by the Contractor, for the handling costs of the Contractor, and for the profit in connection with payments made by the Contractor with respect to the NYS programme implementation.

The amount provided under subitem F6.03(d)(i) shall be expended in accordance with clause 13.4 of the FIDIC Silver Book 2017. The Sub-Clause 4.5.3 of FIDIC Silver Book 2017 will be applicable for all payments under this subitem F6.03 (d)(i).

The amount under subitem F6.03(d)(i) shall be used to cover all costs associated with the provision of training for the NYS workers, including the cost of procuring the services of the accredited trainers and their delivery of the training courses to the NYS workers, and the provision of all training materials including all stationery and study materials.

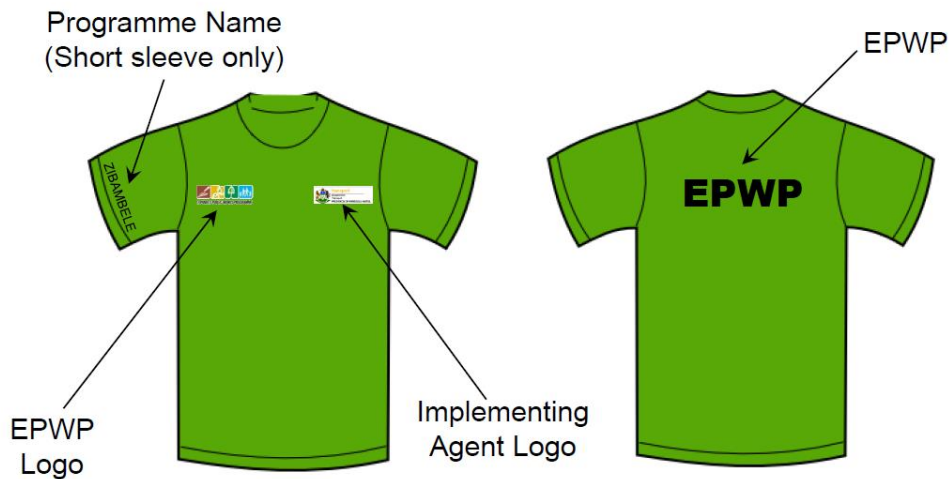
The tendered percentage under subitem F6.03(d)(ii) is a percentage of the total amount of expenditure approved by the Employer's Agent under the amount subitem F6.03(d)(i), and shall include full compensation for attendance by the Contractor, for the handling costs of the Contractor, and for the profit in connection with payments made by the Contractor with respect to the provision of training for the NYS workers, including for the costs of record keeping and reporting with respect to the training received by each NYS worker.

The unit of measurement for subitems F6.03(e)(i) and (ii) shall be the hour. The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all costs related to the Construction Manager and the senior site foreman respectively for time spent at formal liaison meetings authorised and convened by the Employer's Agent for the specific purpose of liaising with the Employer's project manager and / or the training service provider. The payment shall be made only for the time spent in the formal meeting itself. No payment shall be made for time spent during any other on-site liaison, telephonic liaison, e-mail or written correspondence liaison between these parties, or for liaison conducted with the Employer's project manager and / or the training service provider by any other member of the Contractor's site staff or head office personnel, the cost of all of which shall be deemed to be included in the Contractor's time-related obligations under subitem B13.01(c).

# Expanded Public Works Programme: PPE BRANDING For EPWP Projects




## T-Shirt/Overall/Safety Vest Branding




# Logo Options

## Implementing Agent Examples


**National Projects**



**Provincial Department Projects**



**Municipal Projects**



**Contains National Coat Of Arms and name**

**Contains Provincial Coat Of Arms and name**

## EPWP LOGO



**EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME**

The Logo shall not be disproportionately stretched. A monochrome black logo may be used on approval only.

The above logo is the current logo. Logos with green text below the words EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME are old logos and should not be utilised.



PLEASE VERIFY WHICH LOGO NEEDS TO USED

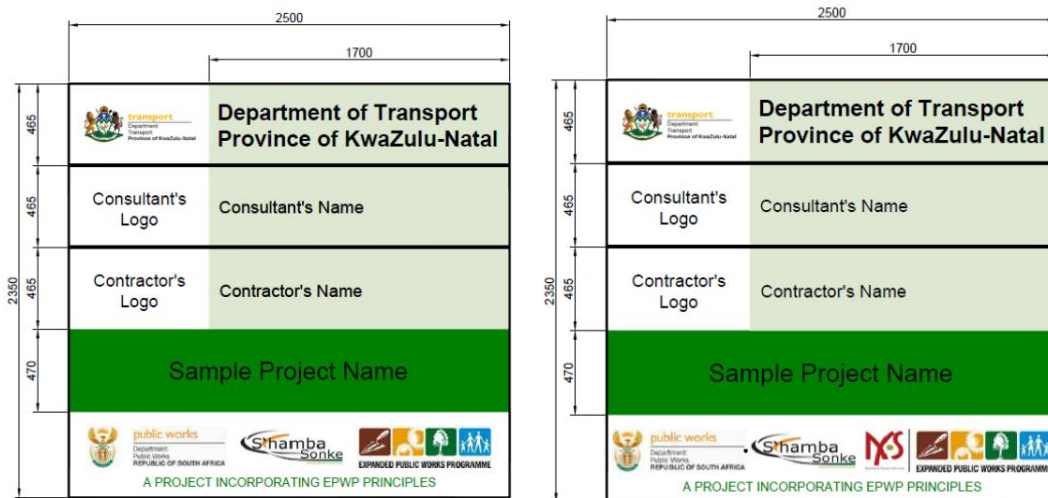
# Printing on PPE

PPE (Overalls) shall be Pantone Green with/without reflective tape and shall be branded as follows:

- Implementer's Logo (printed or embroidered) on the left front pocket location ie over the heart position. (full colour)
- EPWP logo on the right front pocket (printed or embroidered) location (full colour)
- The letters EPWP on the back of the PPE in BLACK
- The program name eg Vuk'uphile is to be printed on the right sleeve of short sleeved apparel and need not be placed on long sleeved apparel.
- Where required, lime green safety vests are to be branded with similar specification above. In this instance the Overalls may not necessarily be branded provided that the use of high visibility vests is mandatory.
- All artwork and PPE samples shall be approved and signed off by the consultant prior to printing/embroidering.



# Project Signboard



For further information contact:

**Petronella Sithebe**

[Petronella.Sithebe@Kzntransport.gov.za](mailto:Petronella.Sithebe@Kzntransport.gov.za)

033-355-8023



**PRO FORMA EPWP CONTRACT OF EMPLOYMENT**

Contractor's  
Logo



**EXPANDED PUBLIC WORKS PROGRAMME**

*This contract must be read in conjunction with the standard terms and conditions of employment on EPWP attached herein.*

**EPWP CONTRACT OF EMPLOYMENT between**

**Employer Details**

<b>Name</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.	<b>Address</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.
<b>Telephone</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.		
<b>Email</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.		
<b>Contact</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.		

And

**Employee Details**

<b>Name</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.	<b>Surname</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.
<b>ID:</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.	<b>Cell</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.
<b>Sex (M/F)</b>	Male <input type="checkbox"/> Female <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Disability</b>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>
<b>Primary Language</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.	<b>Physical Address</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.
<b>Other Languages</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.		
<b>Highest Education Level Achieved</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.	<b>Local Municipality</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.
<b>Other qualifications</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.	<b>Ward</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.
<b>Grant Received (Y/N)</b>	Yes <input type="checkbox"/> No <input type="checkbox"/>	<b>Grant type:</b>	

**Employment Details**

<b>Name of project:</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.		
<b>Job Title:</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.		
<b>Duties:</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.		
<b>Contract Start Date</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.	<b>Contract Finish Date</b>	Click or tap here to enter text.
<b>The wage per task/day is:</b>	R Click or tap here to enter text. / Hour/Day/task (Specifier to select correct rate)		

**Special Conditions**

<p>You must be aware that this employment contract is a limited term contract and not a permanent job. This employment contract may be terminated for any one of the following reasons:</p> <p>a) The contractor does not get additional contracts from the EPWP.                  b) Funding for the programme in your area comes to an end.                  c) Underperformance: first offence – final written warning. Second offence – dismissal.</p>	<p><b>Payment</b></p> <p>a) You will be paid a fixed amount stipulated above for completing a fixed amount of work.                  b) The amount of work required for the agreed rate of pay will vary from task to task. You will be informed at the beginning of each task or group of tasks how much work you are expected to complete per day.                  c) You will only be paid for work completed.                  d) Payment during classroom training shall be R /day</p>
<p>Personal Protective Clothing will be supplied to the employee by the employer depending on the work to be performed, and will remain the property of the employee provided that the employee has worked for at least 3 months.</p>	

**Acceptance**

<b>Employer Name:</b>	<b>Employer Signature:</b>	<b>Employee Name:</b>	<b>Employee Signature:</b>
<b>Witness 1 Name:</b>	<b>Witness 1 Signature:</b>	<b>Witness 2 Name:</b>	<b>Witness 2 Signature:</b>

**APPENDIX E – Conditions of Service**

**1. Introduction**

1.1. This document contains the standard terms and conditions for workers employed in elementary occupations on an Expanded public Works Programme (EPWP). These terms and conditions do NOT apply to persons employed in the supervision and management of an EPWP.

1.2. In this document –

- a) “department” means any department of the State, implementing agent or contractor;
- b) “employer” means any department, implementing agency or contractor that hires workers to work in elementary occupations on an EPWP;
- c) “worker” means any person working in an elementary occupation on an EPWP;
- d) “elementary occupation” means any occupation involving unskilled or semi-skilled work;
- e) “management” means any person employed by a department or implementing agency to administer or execute an EPWP;
- f) “task” means a fixed quantity of work;
- g) “task-based work” means work in which a worker is paid a fixed rate for performing a task;
- h) “task-rated worker” means a worker paid on the basis of the number of tasks completed;
- i) “time-rated worker” means a worker paid on the basis of the length of time worked.

**2. Terms of Work**

- 2.1. Workers on an EPWP are employed on a temporary basis.
- 2.2. A worker may NOT be employed for longer than 24 months in any five-year cycle on an EPWP.
- 2.3. Employment on an EPWP does not qualify as employment as a contributor for the purposes of the Unemployment Insurance Act 30 of 1966.

**3. Normal Hours of Work**

- 3.1. An employer may not set tasks or hours of work that require a worker to work–
  - a) more than forty hours in any week
  - i. on more than five days in any week; and
  - ii. for more than eight hours on any day.
- 3.2. An employer and worker may agree that a worker will work four days per week. The worker may then work up to ten hours per day.
- 3.3. A task-rated worker may not work more than a total of 55 hours in any week to complete the tasks allocated (based on a 40-hour week) to that worker.

**4. Meal Breaks**

- 4.1. A worker may not work for more than five hours without taking a meal break of at least thirty minutes duration.
- 4.2. An employer and worker may agree on longer meal breaks.
- 4.3. A worker may not work during a meal break. However, an employer may require a worker to perform duties during a meal break if those duties cannot be left unattended and cannot be performed by another worker. An employer must take reasonable steps to ensure that a worker is relieved of his or her duties during the meal break.
- 4.4. A worker is not entitled to payment for the period of a meal break. However, a worker who is paid on the basis of time worked must be paid if the worker is required to work or to be available for work during the meal break.

**5. Special Conditions for Security Guards**

- 5.1. A security guard may work up to 55 hours per week and up to eleven hours per day.
- 5.2. A security guard who works more than ten hours per day must have a meal break of at least one hour or two breaks of at least 30 minutes each.

**6. Daily Rest Period**

Every worker is entitled to a daily rest period of at least eight consecutive hours. The daily rest period is measured from the time the worker ends work on one day until the time the worker starts work on the next day.

**7. Weekly Rest Period**

Every worker must have two days off every week. A worker may only work on their day off to perform work which must be done without delay and cannot be performed by workers during their ordinary hours of work (“emergency work”).

**8. Work on Sundays and Public Holidays**

- 8.1. A worker may only work on a Sunday or public holiday to perform emergency or security work.
- 8.2. Work on Sundays is paid at the ordinary rate of pay.
- 8.3. A task-rated worker who works on a public holiday must be paid –
  - a) the worker’s daily task rate, if the worker works for less than four hours;
  - b) double the worker’s daily task rate, if the worker works for more than four hours.
- 8.4. A time-rated worker who works on a public holiday must be paid –
  - a) the worker’s daily rate of pay, if the worker works for less than four hours on the public holiday;
  - b) double the worker’s daily rate of pay, if the worker works for more than four hours on the public holiday.

**9. Sick Leave**

- 9.1. Only workers who work four or more days per week have the right to claim sick-pay in terms of this clause.
- 9.2. A worker who is unable to work on account of illness or injury is entitled to claim one day’s paid sick leave for every full month that the worker has worked in terms of a contract.
- 9.3. A worker may accumulate a maximum of twelve days’ sick leave in a year.
- 9.4. Accumulated sick-leave may not be transferred from one contract to another contract.
- 9.5. An employer must pay a task-rated worker the worker’s daily task rate for a day’s sick leave.
- 9.6. An employer must pay a time-rated worker the worker’s daily rate of pay for a day’s sick leave.
- 9.7. An employer must pay a worker sick pay on the worker’s usual payday.
- 9.8. Before paying sick-pay, an employer may require a worker to produce a certificate stating that the worker was unable to work on account of sickness or injury if the worker is –
  - a) absent from work for more than two consecutive days; or
  - b) absent from work on more than two occasions in any eight-week period.
- 9.9. A medical certificate must be issued and signed by a medical practitioner, a qualified nurse or a clinic staff member authorised to issue medical certificates indicating the duration and reason for incapacity.
- 9.10. A worker is not entitled to paid sick-leave for a work-related injury or occupational disease for which the worker can claim compensation under the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act.

Employer	Employee
----------	----------

**10. Maternity Leave**

- 10.1. A worker may take up to four consecutive months' unpaid maternity leave.
- 10.2. A worker is not entitled to any payment or employment-related benefits during maternity leave.
- 10.3. A worker must give her employer reasonable notice of when she will start maternity leave and when she will return to work.
- 10.4. A worker is not required to take the full period of maternity leave. However, a worker may not work for four weeks before the expected date of birth of her child or for six weeks after the birth of her child, unless a medical practitioner, midwife or qualified nurse certifies that she is fit to do so.
- 10.5. A worker may begin maternity leave –
  - a) four weeks before the expected date of birth; or
  - b) on an earlier date –
    - i. if a medical practitioner, midwife or certified nurse certifies that it is necessary for the health of the worker or that of her unborn child; or
    - ii. if agreed to between employer and worker; or
  - iii. on a later date, if a medical practitioner, midwife or certified nurse has certified that the worker is able to continue to work without endangering her health.
- 10.6. A worker who has a miscarriage during the third trimester of pregnancy or bears a stillborn child may take maternity leave for up to six weeks after the miscarriage or stillbirth.
- 10.7. A worker who returns to work after maternity leave, has the right to start a new cycle of twenty-four months employment, unless the EPWP on which she was employed has ended.

**11. Family responsibility leave**

- 11.1. Workers, who work for at least four days per week, are entitled to three days paid family responsibility leave each year in the following circumstances -
  - a) when the employee's child is born;
  - b) when the employee's child is sick;
  - c) in the event of a death of –
    - i. the employee's spouse or life partner;
    - ii. the employee's parent, adoptive parent, grandparent, child, adopted child, grandchild or sibling.

**12. Statement of Conditions**

- 12.1. An employer must give a worker a statement containing the following details at the start of employment –
  - a) the employer's name and address and the name of the EPWP;
  - b) the tasks or job that the worker is to perform; and
  - c) the period for which the worker is hired or, if this is not certain, the expected duration of the contract;
  - d) the worker's rate of pay and how this is to be calculated;
  - e) the training that the worker will receive during the EPWP.
- 12.2. An employer must ensure that these terms are explained in a suitable language to any employee who is unable to read the statement.
- 12.3. An employer must supply each worker with a copy of these conditions of employment.

**13. Keeping Records**

- 13.1. Every employer must keep a written record of at least the following –
  - a) the worker's name and position;
  - b) in the case of a task-rated worker, the number of tasks completed by the worker;
  - c) in the case of a time-rated worker, the time worked by the worker;
  - d) payments made to each worker.
- 13.2. The employer must keep this record for a period of at least three years after the completion of the EPWP.

**14. Payment**

- 14.1. An employer must pay all wages at least monthly in cash or by cheque or into a bank account.
- 14.2. A task-rated worker will only be paid for tasks that have been completed.
- 14.3. An employer must pay a task-rated worker within five weeks of the work being completed and the work having been approved by the manager or the contractor having submitted an invoice to the employer.
- 14.4. A time-rated worker will be paid at the end of each month.
- 14.5. Payment must be made in cash, by cheque or by direct deposit into a bank account designated by the worker.
- 14.6. Payment in cash or by cheque must take place –
  - a) at the workplace or at a place agreed to by the worker;
  - b) during the worker's working hours or within fifteen minutes of the start or finish of work;
  - c) in a sealed envelope which becomes the property of the worker.
- 14.7. An employer must give a worker the following information in writing –
  - a) the period for which payment is made;
  - b) the numbers of tasks completed or hours worked;
  - c) the worker's earnings;
  - d) any money deducted from the payment;
  - e) the actual amount paid to the worker.
- 14.8. If the worker is paid in cash or by cheque, this information must be recorded on the envelope and the worker must acknowledge receipt of payment by signing for it
- 14.9. If a worker's employment is terminated, the employer must pay all monies owing to that worker within one month of the termination of employment.

**15. Deductions**

- 15.1. An employer may not deduct money from a worker's payment unless the deduction is required in terms of a law.
- 15.2. An employer must deduct and pay to the SA Revenue Services any income tax that the worker is required to pay.
- 15.3. An employer who deducts money from a worker's pay for payment to another person must pay the money to that person within the time period and other requirements specified in the agreement law, court order or arbitration award concerned.
- 15.4. An employer may not require or allow a worker to –
  - a) repay any payment except an overpayment previously made by the employer by mistake;
  - b) state that the worker received a greater amount of money than the employer actually paid to the worker; or
  - c) pay the employer or any other person for having been employed.

**16. Health and Safety**

- 16.1. Employers must take all reasonable steps to ensure that the working environment is healthy and safe.
- 16.2. A worker must –
  - a) work in a way that does not endanger his/her health and safety or that of any other person;
  - b) obey any health and safety instruction;
  - c) obey all health and safety rules of the EPWP;
  - d) use any personal protective equipment or clothing issued by the employer;
  - e) report any accident, near-miss incident or dangerous behaviour by another person to their employer or manager.

**17. Compensation for Injuries and Diseases**





- 17.1. It is the responsibility of the employers (other than a contractor) to arrange for all persons employed on an EPWP to be covered in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 130 of 1993.
- 17.2. A worker must report any work-related injury or occupational disease to their employer or manager.
- 17.3. The employer must report the accident or disease to the Compensation Commissioner.
- 17.4. An employer must pay a worker who is unable to work because of an injury caused by an accident at work 75% of their earnings for up to three months. The employer will be refunded this amount by the Compensation Commissioner. This does NOT apply to injuries caused by accidents outside the workplace such as road accidents or accidents at home.

**18. Termination**

- 18.1. The employer may terminate the employment of a worker for good cause after following a fair procedure.
- 18.2. A worker will not receive severance pay on termination.
- 18.3. A worker is not required to give notice to terminate employment. However, a worker who wishes to resign should advise the employer in advance to allow the employer to find a replacement.
- 18.4. A worker who is absent for more than three consecutive days without informing the employer of an intention to return to work will have terminated the contract. However, the worker may be re-engaged if a position becomes available for the balance of the 24-month period.
- 18.5. A worker who does not attend required training events, without good reason, will have terminated the contract. However, the worker may be re-engaged if a position becomes available for the balance of the 24-month period.

**19. Certificate of Service**

- 19.1. On termination of employment, a worker is entitled to a certificate stating –
  - a) the worker's full name;
  - b) the name and address of the employer;
  - c) the EPWP on which the worker worked;
  - d) the work performed by the worker;
  - e) any training received by the worker as part of the EPWP;
  - f) the period for which the worker worked on the EPWP;
  - g) any other information agreed on by the employer and worker.Either party can terminate this agreement with four weeks written notice. In the case where an employee is illiterate notice may be given by that employee verbally.

Employer	Employee
----------	----------

**EPWP DATA COLLECTION TOOL TEMPLATE  
(PRO FORMAS OF MICROSOFT EXCEL SPREADSHEETS)**

EPWP REGISTRATION FORM		
Field requested	Description if needed	Please complete the sections in white
<b>Project Details</b>		
Profile ID	<i>Generated by the system</i>	
Project Name	<i>The name of the project</i>	
Project Reference Number	<i>Contract number</i>	
Project description	<i>Full description of what is happening in the project (as per the appointment letter) and the <b>community benefiting from the project</b></i>	
<b>Duration</b>		
Project Start Date	<i>Planned Start date of the particular contract</i>	
Project End Date	<i>Planned End date of the particular contract</i>	
Estimated Budget	<i>Overall Contract budget (excluding professional fees) for Current Financial Year</i>	
<b>Project Location</b>		
Province	<i>In which province is the project implemented?</i>	<b>KZN</b>
District Municipality	<i>Under which District Municipality does this project falls?</i>	
Local Municipality	<i>Under which Local Municipality does this project falls?</i>	
Latitude (in decimal format)	<i>Is generated by the system</i>	
Longitude (in decimal format)	<i>Is generated by the system</i>	
<b>Project Location per site</b>		
Locality name	<i>Where exactly is the project implemented? (<b>Ward name</b>)</i>	
Subplace	<i>Town / Village</i>	
Ward	<i>The project site is located in which ward?</i>	
Government facility	<i>Landmark near the project (Post office/school/clinic/library)</i>	
Spatial Data Type	<i>Geopoint (structure)/ Line (road)/ Polygon(area)</i>	
Site physical address	<i>Physical address of the site office</i>	
<b>Public Body Details</b>		
Public body sphere	<i>In which sphere is the project implemented? (National, Provincial or Municipal)</i>	<b>Provincial</b>
Reporting public body that is the project owner (and will report on the project)	<i>Which Institution or Department that owns / approved this project (Education, Health, City of Tshwane Metro etc.)</i>	<b>KZN Department of Transport</b>
Department in the Public body that is responsible for the project	<i>Which department /unit is responsible for this project? (e.g. Roads &amp; storm water, Education, Community safety etc.)</i>	<b>KZN Department of Transport</b>
Implementing public body type	<i>In which sphere is this project implemented? (Metro, Distr, Mun, National or Provincial Dept.)</i>	<b>Provincial</b>
Public body that will implement the project	<i>Which institution that implements the project?</i>	<b>KZN Department of Transport</b>
<b>Project Implementation</b>		
Is this the project on the municipal IDP	<i>Yes / No</i>	<b>N/A</b>
IDP reference number allocated to the project	<i>The number reflected in your Municipal IDP document</i>	<b>N/A</b>
<b>EPWP Details</b>		
EPWP Sector	<i>The project is implemented in which sector? (Infrastructure, Environment &amp; culture, Non-state or Social)</i>	<b>Infrastructure</b>
EPWP Programme	<i>The project is implemented under which programme?</i>	
EPWP Sub Programme	<i>The project is implemented under which sub-programme?</i>	

EPWP BUSINESS FORM		
Field requested	Description if needed	Please complete the sections in white
<b>Project Details</b>		
Profile ID	<i>Generated by the system</i>	
Project Name	<i>The name of the project</i>	
Project Reference Number	<i>Contract number</i>	
Project description	<i>Full description of what is happening in the project (as per the appointment letter) and the community benefiting from the project</i>	
<b>Duration</b>		
Project Start Date		
Project End Date		
Estimated Budget	<i>Project Budget</i>	
<b>Project Location</b>		
Province		KZN
District Municipality	<i>Under which District Municipality does this projects falls</i>	
Local Municipality	<i>Under which Local Municipality does this projects falls</i>	
Latitude (in decimal format)	<i>GPS coordinates</i>	
Longitude (in decimal format)		
<b>Public Body Details</b>		
Public body sphere	<i>Such as Municipal or Provincial</i>	Provincial
Reporting public body that is the project owner (and will report on the project)	<i>Which Department approved the project in (education, Health etc.)</i>	KZN Department of Transport
Department / Unit in the Public body that is responsible for the project	<i>Which Department budgeted for the project e.g. Education, Health Directorate</i>	KZN Department of Transport
Implementing public body type	<i>Example(Local Municipality, Distr. Mun or Provincial Dept.</i>	Provincial
Public body that will implement the project	<i>Infrastructure, Environment or Social</i>	KZN Department of Transport
Is this project on the Municipal IDP	<i>Municipal projects</i>	N/A
IDP reference number allocated to the project		N/A

EPWP Details		
EPWP Sector	<i>The project is implemented in which sector? (Infrastructure, Environment &amp; culture, Non-state or Social)</i>	Infrastructure
EPWP programme	<i>The project is implemented under which programme?</i>	
EPWP Sub Programme	<i>The project is implemented under which sub-programme?</i>	
Budget Amount-(Allocations for the project duration)		
Funding Body	<i>Which Dept. is funding the project</i>	KZN Department of Transport
Funding Year	<i>Financial year/s for the project</i>	
Total Budget Amount	<i>(Exclude Professional Fees)</i>	
Incentive Grant(e.g. landcare / EPWP grant)	<i>Grant funding received</i>	
Total wages paid for the duration of the projects	<i>What amount will be spent on wages during the duration of the project</i>	
Wage Rate	<i>Daily Wage rate to be paid during productive work</i>	
Stipend Rate	<i>Daily wage rate to be paid during training</i>	
UIF	<i>The amount being paid to UIF (if applicable)</i>	
COIDA	<i>The amount being paid to COIDA(if applicable)</i>	
Training	<i>What amount will be spent on training</i>	
Administration	<i>The Administration costs</i>	
Equipment and materials	<i>Budget for Materials and Equipment</i>	
Other	<i>If other where chosen describe the other Such as Professional fees)</i>	
Describe other		
Project Outputs and Training		
Planned Primary Output	<i>eg walkways, gabions, kerb * channel, km of road constructed</i>	
Description of Planned Primary Output	<i>Describe the project output (end product and not the milestone) (e.g. kms of tar road constructed) Start with the unit of measure such as number of, kms, ha, sqms etc</i>	
Unit of measure of primary output	<i>Eg. m, m<sup>2</sup>, m<sup>3</sup>, km, no, ha etc</i>	
Planned primary output quantity	<i>Specify the quantity of output planned</i>	
Number of persons to be trained	<i>How many persons are targeted for on job training</i>	

Contact person		
Title	Person responsible for the Project in the Public Body (Project Manager)	
Initials		
First Name		
Surname		
Email		
Tel (Office)		
Fax Number		
Cell Number		
Physical Address 1		
Physical Address 2		
Physical Address 3		
Physical Address 4		
Postal Address 1		
Postal Address 2		
Postal Address 3		
Postal Address 4		
Position of person		

Participant's personal details												Grants		Experience/ Literacy		Location Details		Nation- ality	Household Details			Quality Check				
No	First Name as per ID <small>document</small>	Initials	Surname	ID number	Disability (Y/N)	Education Level	Start Date	End Date	Language ID	Address	Cell Number	Government Grant (Y/N) and Type	Other Language 1	Other Language 2	District Municipality	Local Municipality	Nationality (RSA/ Non- RSA)	Number of people in	Number of Dependants in Household	Number of Children attending school	Picture Clear	Text clear	Certification within 3 months of employment	Clear certification	Commissioner details clear	

Participant Training Data													
Course ID	Course Name	Code	Training category (Accredited / non-accredited)	Type of training course (Unit standard, Trade Titles, Short courses, Public body specific)	Start	End (for the entire training duration)	Number of Trainees	Number of Days	Cost (for the entire training course)	Status of training (Not started, In progress, Completed)	Training Provider Name	Training Provider Contact Number	Training Provider Address

EPWP Monthly Progress Form		
Field requested	Description if needed	Please complete the sections in white
<b>Project Details</b>		
Profile ID	full descripton of what is happening in the project (as per the appointment letter) and the community benefiting from the project	
Project Name	The name of the project	
Project Reference Number	Contract number	
Project description	Full descripton of what is happening in the project (as per the appointment letter) and the community benefiting from the project	
<b>Month</b>		
Reporting Month		April
<b>Budget Expenditure</b>		
Cumulative Expenditure Amount	What is the Overall amount spend on this project?	
Current Expenditure Amount	What is the amount spend including all grants for this month?	
Wages	How much paid on wages for this month only?	
UIF	How much paid on UIF for this month only?	
COIDA	How much paid on COIDA for this month only?	
Stipends for training	Amount paid to participants whilst on training (this month only)	
Amount spent on service providers for training	How much paid to service providers for training for this month only?	
Training	Total Cost of training for this month? (number captured on ERS)	
Administration	How much paid on administration for this month only?	
Equipment and materials	How much paid on equipment and materials for this month only?	
Other	How much paid on other?	
Describe other	Be specific e.g. Consulting fees, Transport etc.	
Project output description	Describe the project output (end product and not the milestone) (e.g. kms of tar road constructed) Start with the unit of measure such as number of, kms, ha, sqms etc	
Unit of measure of primary output	Eg. m, m <sup>2</sup> , m <sup>3</sup> , km, no, ha etc	
Cumulative primary output achieved	Since the onset of the project	
Quantity Achieved	enter numeric output for this month only	
Percentage achieved	How much work done / achieved in percentages?	
<b>EPWP Branding</b>		
Branding compliant	Yes / No	
Date that the branding was provided	When was the project branded?	
Has a photo of project branding been provided?	Yes / No	
First name of Official Who Branded Project	Official Name	
Surname of Official Who Branded Project	Official Surname	
Phone number of official who erected branding for the project	Official contact number	
Give the public body reference and name, and organisational details of the person that provided branding.	Public body details ( reference & name)	



First Name	Initials	Surname	ID number	Date Of Birth	Wage Rate	Total Paid Days	Amount Paid	Work Days	Training Days Paid	Training Days Non Paid	Total Training Days	Training Course ID	Project Profile ID	Month	Year	Beneficiary Code



## The Attendance Register for on-site Workers

Reporting month: \_\_\_\_\_

Mobile No: \_\_\_\_\_

Project Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Contract no: \_\_\_\_\_

Surname: \_\_\_\_\_

First Name: \_\_\_\_\_

IDENTITY NUMBER: 

--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--	--

Day	Date	Time In	Signature	Time Out	Signature	Report On Any Formal Training Provided In The Reporting Month
<b>WEEK 1</b>						
MONDAY						
TUESDAY						
WEDNESDAY						
THURSDAY						
FRIDAY						
<b>WEEK 2</b>						
MONDAY						
TUESDAY						
WEDNESDAY						
THURSDAY						
FRIDAY						
<b>WEEK 3</b>						
MONDAY						
TUESDAY						
WEDNESDAY						
THURSDAY						
FRIDAY						
<b>WEEK 4</b>						
MONDAY						
TUESDAY						
WEDNESDAY						
THURSDAY						
FRIDAY						
<b>WEEK 5</b>						
MONDAY						
TUESDAY						
WEDNESDAY						
THURSDAY						
FRIDAY						
<b>Total Days worked</b>						

### C3.3 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS

#### PART G: SMALL CONTRACTOR DEVELOPMENT

##### G1. SCOPE

This part provides the procedures that relate to the Contractor implementing the CIDB B.U.I.L.D Standard for Indirect Targeting for Enterprise Development through construction Works Contracts, the Employer's policies and initiatives, enabling the Employer to realise its social and development objectives through the participation of Targeted Enterprises and Labour in the construction of the Works. The approach adopted enables the delivery of a wide range of social and economic deliverables, including the employment of local resources, employment opportunities for labour enhanced works

The participation of Targeted Enterprises and Labour, measured in monetary terms, is specified as a contract participation goal by the Employer, for the Contractor to achieve.

The bidder shall:

- Subcontract a minimum of 30% of the scope of works to targeted enterprises;
- Perform needs analysis on the targeted enterprise to identify developmental goals;
- Provide internal mentorship support to improve the targeted enterprise/s performance;
- Develop a project specific enterprise development plan to improve the targeted enterprise/s performance in the identified developmental areas to the CIDB Competence Standard for Contractors Gazette No. 41237, 10 November 2017
- Monitor and report the progress of the agreed development areas with the targeted enterprise/s
  - Submit a project completion report to the Employer's representative for each targeted enterprise

##### G2. DEFINITIONS

Unless inconsistent with the context, in these specifications the following terms, words or expressions shall have the meanings hereby assigned to them:

G2.1 "**Black People**" has the meaning assigned to it in section 1 of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act No 53 of 2003), and the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Amended Act, 2013 (Act No 46 of 2013).

G2.2 "**Contract Participation**" means a process whereby the Employer sets a target to achieve its social and development objectives through the participation of Targeted Enterprises and Labour in the construction of the Works.

G2.3 "**Contract Participation Goal (CPG)**" means the value of goods, services and works for which the Contractor contracts Targeted Enterprises and Labour exclusive of any value added tax which the law requires the Employer to pay to the Contractor, expressed as a percentage of the Contract Price (adjusted to exclude penalties and value added tax).

G2.4 "**EME**" means an exempted micro enterprise in terms of a code of good practice on black economic empowerment issued in terms of section 9(1) of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act No 53 of 2003).

G2.5 "**Military Veteran**" has the meaning assigned to it in section 1 of the Military Veterans Act, 2011 (Act No 18 of 2011).

G2.6 "**people with disabilities**" has the meaning assigned to it in section 1 of the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act No 55 of 1998).

G2.7 "**Project Management Team (PMT)**" means a team established at the commencement of the contract, comprising a representative from each of the Employer, the Employer's Agent and the Contractor, that will be responsible for various functions related to the implementation of the Contract Participation process.

G2.8 “QSE” means a qualifying small enterprise in terms of a code of good practice on black economic empowerment issued in terms of section 9(1) of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (Act No 53 of 2003).

G2.9 “Target Area” means the geographic area stated in the Contract Data.

G2.10 “Targeted Enterprise” means an entity to which the Contractor subcontracts a percentage of the contract value as a condition of contract and which is:

- (i) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people;
- (ii) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people who are youth;
- (iii) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people who are women;
- (iv) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people with disabilities; or
- (v) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people who are military veterans.

G2.11 “Targeted Labour” means individuals, employed by the Contractor and subcontractors in the performance of the contract, who permanently reside in the target area or who are recognised as being residents of the target area on the basis of identification and association with and recognition by the residents of the target area, and excludes any labour employed by suppliers and manufacturers.

G2.12 “Youth” means persons between the ages of 18 and 35.

### **G3. CONTRACT PARTICIPATION**

#### **G3.1 Objective**

In order for the Employer to realise its social and development objectives, the Contractor is required to provide business and labour opportunities through the participation of Targeted Enterprises and Labour in the construction of the Works. The participation of Targeted Enterprises and Labour, measured in monetary terms, is specified by the Employer as a contract participation goal, for the Contractor to achieve.

#### **G3.2 Contract Participation process**

The Contractor shall engage Targeted Enterprises and Labour in the performance of the contract to the extent that the total monetary value of such engagements exclusive of any value added tax, expressed as a percentage of the Contract Price (adjusted to exclude penalties and value added tax), is not less than the Contract Participation Goal specified in the contract.

##### **G3.2.1 Contract Participation plan**

The Contractor shall submit to the Employer’s Agent details of his plan to achieve the Contract Participation Goal with his initial programme in terms of which he will carry out the Works. The Contract Participation plan shall be submitted with all subsequent adjusted programmes.

The Contract Participation plan shall indicate the expected delivery dates of goods provided by Targeted Enterprises, and the commencement and completion dates of work and services to be performed by all the Targeted Enterprises and Labour engaged on the contract for the purpose of securing credits towards the Contract Participation Goal.

The information contained in the Contract Participation plan facilitates, in the first instance, the monitoring by the Employer’s Agent of the performance of the Contractor in terms of his Contract Participation Goal obligations and, in the second instance, the making of any adjustments by the Contractor to compensate for quantitative underruns, the elimination of items contracted to Targeted Enterprises or Labour, or any other reason beyond the Contractor’s control which may be acceptable

to the Employer

### **G3.2.2 Targeted Enterprises**

The bidder shall engage Targeted Enterprises comprising subcontractors and suppliers directly or indirectly in the performance of the contract. Prior to such Targeted Enterprises being engaged, the Contractor shall submit to the DDG:TIDS or his delegated official documentation in a form approved by the Department (Employer), to confirm that the enterprise satisfies the eligibility criteria for recognition as a targeted enterprise.

The bidder shall enter into written contractual agreements with all the Targeted Enterprises, in a form approved by the Employer. Copies of such agreements and the written acceptance thereof shall be submitted to the Employer.

In the case of Targeted Enterprise subcontractors, only those subcontractors procured through a tender process as specified in clause G6 Tender Process for Targeted Enterprise Subcontractor Procurement, shall qualify to have their contribution count towards the Contract Participation Goal.

The bidder may not subcontract more than 25% of the Contract Price to Targeted Enterprises whose B-BBEE status level of contributor is lower than the Contractor's.

The contractor must allocate 30% of the cost of works (Schedule C) as a amount for contract participation goals (CPG). Procurement under this amount must align with the employer's CPG objectives.

### **G3.2.3 Targeted Labour**

The Contractor shall engage Targeted Labour directly or indirectly in the performance of the contract. It is a requirement of the contract that such Targeted Labour be engaged by means of a written contract, in a form approved by the Employer's Agent.

The requirements for the engagement of such Targeted Labour is contained in Part F: Expanded Public Works Programme.

## **G3.3 Contract Participation Goal**

The Contract Participation Goal comprises two targets, namely subcontracting of the Works to Targeted Enterprises (30%), and employment of Targeted Labour (6%). The Contract Participation Goal targets are stated as a percentage unit of measure in the Contract Data, for the Contractor to achieve to the extent that the total monetary value of such subcontracting and employment engagements exclusive of any value added tax, expressed as a percentage of the Contract Price (adjusted to exclude penalties and value added tax), are each not less than the respective Contract Participation Goal target stated in the contract.

### **G3.3.1 Monthly submission of supporting documentation**

The Contractor shall prepare and submit on a monthly basis to the Employer's Agent in a form approved by the Employer's Agent, the following:

- (i) a brief report which describes the commercially useful functions performed by the Targeted Enterprises and Labour in the performance of the contract, both during the interim period and on a cumulative basis;
- (ii) a schedule reflecting the estimated total value of the contracts, the cumulative value of the contracts, and the value of goods provided, and work and services performed over the period for which payment is claimed with respect to each and every Targeted Enterprise; and
- (iii) a schedule which lists the names, identity numbers, gender, trade/occupation, period of employment, employment number and the like, as directed by the Employer's Agent,

together with the respective wage rates payable in respect of Targeted Labour, including the monetary value of wages paid both on a cumulative basis and over the period for which payment is claimed.

Should random inspections conducted by the Employer's Agent on Targeted Enterprise and Labour activities indicate that such Targeted Enterprises and Labour are not performing in accordance with the requirements of the contract, the Contractor shall provide, in addition to the monthly reporting requirements, separate weekly resource returns and any other relevant information with respect to such Targeted Enterprises and Labour in a form approved by the Employer's Agent.

### **G3.3.2 Contract Participation Goal credits**

#### **G3.3.2.1 Granting of credits**

The Employer's Agent shall certify the value of the credits counted towards the Contract Participation Goal whenever a claim for payment is issued to the Employer and shall notify the Contractor of the amount. The value of the credits counted shall not include any expenditure on Goods and Labour which forms part of the monetary value of the contributions made by Targeted Enterprise subcontractors.

Credits towards the Contract Participation Goal shall be granted by converting the value of the following (including contract price adjustment and rise/fall on special materials, but excluding value added tax) to a percentage of the Contract Price (adjusted to exclude penalties and value added tax), as relevant:

- (i) subcontracting CPG:
  - the total monetary value of the contributions made by Targeted Enterprise subcontractors in fulfilling contractual obligations; and
  - expenditure on Goods required for the contract, which are obtained from Targeted Enterprise suppliers.
- (ii) employment CPG:
  - the total monetary value of wages paid to Targeted Labour.

#### **G3.3.2.2 Denial of credits**

No credits shall be granted should the Contractor make a direct payment to a supplier or manufacturer on behalf of a Targeted Enterprise when such payment is recovered by making deductions from payments to the Targeted Enterprise in connection with the contract; or should the Contractor fail to enter into a written agreement with the relevant Targeted Enterprise.

In addition, credits claimed towards the Contract Participation Goal shall be denied where written contractual agreements contain any of the following:

- (i) a right to set off in favour of the employing Contractor not provided for by law;
- (ii) authoritarian rights given to the employing Contractor or his agent, with no recourse to independent adjudication in the event of a dispute arising;
- (iii) payment procedures based on a pay-when-paid system;
- (iv) a dispute resolution process which does not include inexpensive alternative dispute resolution procedures, such as mediation or adjudication, but which only makes use of formal proceedings such as arbitration or litigation; or
- (v) conditions which are more onerous than those which exist in the main contract.

Credits shall be denied should Targeted Enterprises not adhere to statutory labour practices or fail to perform commercially useful functions.

### **G3.3.3 Contract Participation Goal evaluation**

The Contractor shall, upon completion of each individual Targeted Enterprise's contract, issue a completion certificate and certify the amount paid to such Targeted Enterprises. The Contractor shall submit the certificates, counter-certified by the relevant Targeted Enterprises, to the Employer's Agent for record-keeping purposes. The Contractor shall furnish justification to the Employer's Agent whenever it is not possible to obtain such counter-certification.

The Contractor shall, upon termination of the services of the individuals classed as Targeted Labour engaged in activities relating to the performance of the contract, certify the amount paid to such individuals and submit the certificate, counter-certified by the relevant individual, to the Employer's Agent for record-keeping purposes. The Contractor shall furnish justification to the Employer's Agent whenever it is not possible to obtain such counter-certification.

On completion of the contract, the Employer's Agent shall determine the final credits to be granted towards the Contract Participation Goal targets, by converting the value of credits (including contract price adjustment and rise/fall on special materials, but excluding value added tax) to a percentage of the Contract Price (adjusted to exclude penalties and value added tax)

### **G3.3.4 Sanctions**

In the event that the Contractor fails to substantiate that any failure to achieve any of the Contract Participation Goal targets, is due to quantitative underruns, the elimination of items contracted to Targeted Enterprises, or any other reason beyond the Contractor's control which may be acceptable to the Employer, the Contractor shall be liable for a financial penalty as prescribed in clause SCC 4.1.1 of section C1.2.1.2 Special Conditions of Contract. The subcontracting financial penalty shall be calculated as follows:

$$P = 0,05 \times [(D - D_0)/100] \times C_A$$

where

- D is the Contract Participation Goal percentage
- D<sub>0</sub> is the Contract Participation Goal percentage which the Employer's Agent certifies, based on the credits passed, as being achieved upon completion of the contract
- C<sub>A</sub> contract amount which is the Contract Price (adjusted to exclude penalties and value added tax)
- P is the monetary value of penalty payable

The evaluation of the Contractor's achievement of the Contract Participation Goal for the subcontracting of the Works to Targeted Enterprises, shall be undertaken monthly by the Employer's Agent based on the accumulative achievements in comparison to the programmed utilisation of Targeted Enterprises, as a means of monitoring the Contractor's performance in achieving the Contract Participation Goal.

Failure by the Contractor to achieve the Contract Participation Goal target by the time of Practical Completion, shall result in the financial penalty being applied as prescribed in this clause. The Employer's Agent shall make a final determination of the Contractor's achievement of the Contract Participation Goals based on the value of the Final Payment Certificate.

## **G4. DUTIES OF THE EMPLOYER AND ENGINEER**

The Employer, Engineer, and the Contractor, or their representatives, are parties to the Project Liaison Committee and are co-responsible for successful project Stakeholder and Community liaison. The Employer and the Engineer also play a supporting role in the successful implementation of the Employer's Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprise utilisation and development goals.

To implement the Employer's Targeted Labour and Targeted Enterprise goals, the Employer and the Engineer shall provide support to the Contractor by executing the following duties:

- (i) Make recommendations to the Contractor in the identification and structuring of the work packages to be subcontracted to Targeted Enterprises and agree to the scope and extent of the work packages.
- (ii) Verify that the Targeted Enterprise Database(s), have been updated prior to the letting of every new set of subcontracts.
- (iii) Endorse all Databases, and approve tender procedures, tender documents, tender submission requirements and adjudication processes for the subcontracting of Targeted Enterprises.
- (iv) Review all tender adjudication reports and monitor that the criteria and procedures applied by the Contractor to subcontract work to Targeted Enterprises are executed in a fair and transparent manner and are in accordance with the Employer's standards.
- (v) Endorse subcontract agreements and ensure that the conditions of subcontracting with Targeted Enterprises are fair and transparent and within the prescripts of the Contract requirements.
- (vi) Monitor the management of Targeted Enterprise subcontracts and ensure that conditions such as the application of penalties and the termination of contracts, are applied in a fair and transparent manner and within the prescripts of the agreement.
- (vii) Verify that the Labour Database(s) from which Targeted Labour will be employed is updated prior to every new Labour intake.
- (viii) Monitor that the criteria and procedures applied by the Contractor to employ Targeted Labour are executed in a fair and transparent manner and is within the Contract requirements.
- (ix) Monitor that the conditions of employment of Targeted Labour are applied in a fair and transparent manner and within the prescripts of the current and relevant Labour legislation.
- (x) Make recommendations to the Contractor in the identification of the training requirements of Targeted Enterprises and Targeted Labour and approve the proposed training programmes.
- (xi) Monitor that training programmes and support programmes, which the Contractor committed to, are implemented and executed as intended.

## **G5. SPECIFIC WORK TO BE CARRIED OUT BY TARGETED ENTERPRISE SUBCONTRACTORS**

### **G5.1 Subcontract scope of work**

It is a requirement of the contract that only those Targeted Enterprise subcontractors procured through a tender process by the Contractor, shall qualify to have their contribution count towards the Contract Participation Goal.

For this particular contract, the following listed work has been identified in terms of this Particular Specification, Part G, as suitable for execution by Targeted Enterprise subcontractors in order to assist the Contractor in achieving the Contract Participation Goal:

- (i) Clearing and grubbing.
- (ii) Construction and clearing of drains.
- (iii) Installation of prefabricated culverts including inlet and outlet structures.
- (iv) Concrete channelling and concrete linings for open drains.



- (v) Pitching, stonework and protection against erosion.
- (vi) Construction of gabions.
- (vii) Erection of guardrails.
- (viii) Erection of road signs.
- (ix) Landscaping.
- (x) Finishing the road and road reserve.
- (xi) Other work identified by the Employer to be executed in the community area.

The work to be carried out by Targeted Enterprise subcontractors is not limited to the work listed above, and the Contractor may need to engage Targeted Enterprises and Labour on other aspects of the Works in order to achieve the Contract Participation Goal.

### **G5.2 Subcontract work packages**

The work activities shall be grouped into varying sizes of work packages according to the CIDB contractor grading designation and class of construction works. The typical scope of work may include the following class of construction works and specialist works but not limited to:

- (i) Class of construction works – Civil Engineering (CE); and
- (ii) Specialist Works:
  - Asphalt works (SB);
  - Demolition and blasting (SE);
  - Piling (SJ);
  - Road marking and signage (SK); and
  - Structural steelwork fabrication and erection (SL).

For this contract the minimum number of prescribed work packages for execution by Targeted Enterprise subcontractors is indicated in table G1/1 according to the CIDB contractor grading designation and the scope of work according to the sections of the COTO Standard Specifications.

**TABLE G1/1: PRESCRIBED MINIMUM NUMBER OF WORK PACKAGES ACCORDING TO CIDB CONTRACTOR GRADING DESIGNATION TO BE DETERMINED IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE PMT**

CHAPTER	DESCRIPTION	TARGETED ENTERPRISE SUBCONTRACTOR CIDB CONTRACTOR GRADING DESIGNATION					
		1 Max: R0,5 m	2 Max: R1 m	3 Max: R3 m	4 Max: R6 m	5 Max: R10 m	6 Max: R20 m
	<b>MINIMUM TOTAL NUMBER OF TARGETED ENTERPRISE SUBCONTRACTORS PRESCRIBED FOR EACH CIDB CONTRACTOR GRADING DESIGNATION</b>						

### **G5.3 Subcontract bill of quantities**

The items of work identified for execution by Targeted Enterprise subcontractors needs to be quantified and put together by the bidder.

## **G6. TENDER PROCESS FOR TARGETED ENTERPRISE SUBCONTRACTOR PROCUREMENT**

### **G6.1 Subcontract scope of work**

At appointment and upon agreement with the employer, the Contractor must package the work activities to be execution by Targeted Enterprise subcontractors and shall present his proposal to the Employer for approval. The packaged works must be reduced into an itemised bill of quantities and tender documents must be compiled in this regard.

### **G6.2 Compilation of subcontract tenders**

The Contractor shall be responsible for compiling the tender documents that will enable him to engage the Targeted Enterprise subcontractors for the various work packages, according to the contractor grading designation and class of construction works or specialist works. The Contractor shall compile each subcontract tender document in such a manner that it shall facilitate the achievement of all objectives and principles pertaining to the development of the Targeted Enterprise subcontractors.

The tender documentation shall comply with the Employer's standards, including its standard conditions of tender. The following returnable schedules shall form part of the tender document for submission by tenderers:

- (i) certificate of registration of the tenderer in the required CIDB contractor grading designation, confirming the tenderer's registration Status as "Active" at the closing date of tender submission;
- (ii) tax compliance status report;
- (iii) B-BBEE verification certificate or sworn affidavit;
- (iv) proof of registration on the Central Supplier Database; and
- (v) compliance with the COID Act.

The tender documents shall also contain the proposed subcontract agreement in accordance with clause G8.1.

The draft tender documents shall be subject to approval by the Employer. The Contractor may then proceed with the preparation of tender documents for the work packages.

### **G6.3 Tender process**

The Contractor shall be responsible for advertising the tenders for the work packages, and inviting tenders from Targeted Enterprise subcontractors in consultation with the Employer and the project PLC.

In consultation with the Employer, the Contractor shall identify the number of work packages which are to be executed by Targeted Enterprise subcontractors from specific designated groups.

The Contractor shall conduct a compulsory briefing session for tenderers, attended by the Employer to explain the Works required and the tender process to the Targeted Enterprise subcontractors.

Tenders for the subcontracted works must close at a stipulated time and date. Tenders shall be placed in a suitable formal Tender Box, located at the Contractor's site office. The tender opening shall be conducted by the Contractor in the presence of the Employers delegated official.

#### **G6.4 Tender evaluation**

The Contractor and the Employer shall evaluate the tenders according to the Employer's standards. The Contractor shall prepare the tender adjudication report for each subcontract and submit it to the Employer for review prior to award of each subcontract.

#### **G6.5 Allocation of subcontract work packages**

The Contractor shall identify responsive tenders received for the various work packages from Targeted Enterprises in the following designated groups:

- (i) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people;
- (ii) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people who are youth;
- (iii) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people who are women;
- (iv) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people with disabilities; or
- (v) an EME or QSE which is at least 51% owned by black people who are military veterans.

The selection of subcontract work packages shall then be made, in consultation with the Employer in accordance with the provisions of clause 4.4 of the FIDIC SILVER BOOK, in order to comply with the Employer's targeted procurement objectives.

#### **G6.6 Award of subcontract work packages**

Following the selection of the Targeted Enterprise subcontractors for the various work packages in consultation with the Employer in accordance with clause 4.4 of the FIDIC SILVER BOOK, the Contractor shall provide written confirmation of the Targeted Enterprise subcontractor selected for each work package. The Contractor shall award each work package to the respective Targeted Enterprise subcontractor.

### **G7. GENERAL RESPONSIBILITIES OF THE CONTRACTOR TOWARDS TARGETED ENTERPRISES**

#### **G7.1 Obligations**

The Contractor shall ensure that he complies with the following obligations:

- (i) institute a quality assurance system;
- (ii) provide adequate training, coaching, guidance, mentoring and assistance to Targeted Enterprises;
- (iii) provide financial support and other assistance to ensure that Targeted Enterprises are able to meet their obligations and commitments with respect to their subcontracts, including acquisition of labour, construction equipment and materials;
- (iv) ensure that the contract participation goals and objectives are achieved; and
- (v) make provision for Targeted Enterprises to be established within the Contractor's own camp facilities, and be responsible for the provision of site offices, common camp facilities, medical, security, safety, electricity, water, sewage services, waste disposal and all other camp services.

## **G7.2 Subcontracts**

In the subcontracts arranged by the Contractor involving Targeted Enterprises, the following shall apply:

- (i) the appointment of Targeted Enterprises by the Contractor shall be made in accordance with the provisions of Sub-Clause 4.4 of the FIDIC SILVER BOOK; and
- (ii) no provision or requirements set out in the specifications shall be deemed to relieve the Contractor of any liability or obligation under the contract, and in accordance with the provisions of clause 4.4 of the FIDIC SILVER BOOK, the Contractor shall be liable for the acts, defaults and negligence of any Targeted Enterprise, his agents or employees as fully as if they were the acts, defaults or negligence of the Contractor.

## **G8. MANAGEMENT OF TARGETED ENTERPRISE SUBCONTRACTS**

The Contractor shall conclude the subcontract agreements and provide the necessary management support to the Targeted Enterprises. Failure by a Targeted Enterprise to comply with the terms and conditions of the subcontract agreement shall result in penalties being applied or the subcontract terminated.

### **G8.1 Compilation of subcontract conclusion agreement**

- (a) The Contractor in liaison with the Employer and Employer's Agent shall be responsible for the conclusion of each subcontract agreement. The agreement shall be in accordance with the provisions of clause 4.4 of the FIDIC SILVER BOOK and shall be consistent with the terms and conditions in this contract. The agreement shall be subject to approval by the Employer and Employer's Agent.
- (b) The terms and conditions of the subcontract agreement shall also specify the following:
  - (i) an entitlement of the Targeted Enterprise to receive such training as is contemplated in this contract;
  - (ii) an obligation on the Targeted Enterprise to participate and co-operate in such training as is provided for in this contract;
  - (iii) the allowable sources from which workers may be drawn in terms of the contract;
  - (iv) the terms and conditions relating to the recruitment, employment and remuneration of workers engaged on the contract;
  - (v) the training to be provided to the workers; and
  - (vi) the terms and conditions relating to payment of the Targeted Enterprise. Such terms and conditions shall also include a clause stipulating that payment to a Targeted Enterprise for work done shall be made within 30 days of submission of the invoice by the Targeted Enterprise to the Contractor. In the event of failure by the Contractor to make the payment by the due date, he shall pay to the Targeted Enterprise interest, at the prime overdraft rate charged by the Targeted Enterprise's bank, compounded monthly, on all overdue payments from the date on which the same should have been paid to the date when payment is effected, without prejudice to the Targeted Enterprise's other rights under the contract or by law.

### **G8.2 Quality of work and performance of the Targeted Enterprise**

- (a) The Contractor shall closely monitor and supervise all Targeted Enterprises and shall train, mentor, guide and assist each Targeted Enterprise in all aspects of management, execution and completion of his subcontract. This shall typically include assistance with planning of the works, sourcing and ordering of materials, labour relations, monthly measurements and invoicing procedures. The extent and level of such training, mentoring, guidance and assistance to be provided by the Contractor shall be commensurate with the basic level of subcontract applicable and shall be directed at enabling the Targeted Enterprise to achieve the successful execution and completion of their subcontract.

- (b) The Contractor shall closely monitor and supervise all Targeted Enterprises and shall give reasonable warning to the Targeted Enterprise when any contravention of the terms and conditions of the subcontract has occurred or appears likely to occur. The Contractor shall, whenever feasible, give the Targeted Enterprise reasonable opportunity to make good any such contravention, or to avoid such contravention, and shall render all reasonable assistance to the Targeted Enterprise in this regard.

### **G8.3 Dispute avoidance and resolution procedures**

- (a) When taking any disciplinary action or imposing a penalty as provided for in the subcontract, the Contractor shall explain fully to the Targeted Enterprise that such actions are provided for in the subcontract. If such action is contemplated this shall be discussed with the Employer's Agent before any action is taken.
- (b) If the Targeted Enterprise, in the opinion of the Employer's Agent, fails to comply with any of the criteria listed below, the Employer's Agent shall issue a written warning to the Contractor, stating all the areas of non-compliance. A copy of the letter of warning shall be forwarded to the Employer. The criteria are as follows:
- (i) acceptable standard of work as set out in the specifications;
  - (ii) progress in accordance with the time constraints in the Targeted Enterprise's contract;
  - (iii) punctual and full payment of the workforce and suppliers;
  - (iv) site safety; and
  - (v) accommodation of traffic.
- (c) The Targeted Enterprise shall have 21 days from the date of receipt of the letter of warning by the Contractor to address and rectify the issues raised by the Employer's Agent, with the exception of the above subclauses (b)(iv) and (v) for which the reaction time shall be in accordance with the relevant specifications for those aspects of the Works but shall not be longer than 24 hours. Failure by the Targeted Enterprise to comply with the deadline set, will be sufficient grounds for the Contractor to apply a penalty, or terminate the subcontract provided that the Employer's Agent is satisfied that the Contractor has made every effort to correct the performance of the Targeted Enterprise.
- (c) The Targeted Enterprise shall have the right to dispute any ruling given or deemed to have been given by the Contractor, Employer's Agent or Employer. Provided that, unless the Targeted Enterprise shall, within 21 days after his receipt of a ruling or after a ruling shall have been deemed to be have been given, give written notice (hereinafter referred to as a Dispute Notice) to the Contractor, referring to this clause, disputing the validity or correctness of the whole or a specified part of the ruling, he shall have no further right to dispute that ruling or the part thereof not disputed in the said notice.

## **G9. TRAINING, COACHING, GUIDANCE AND MENTORING**

### **G9.1 Obligations**

This section provides details of the Contractor's obligations of implementing the National Skills Development Strategy. This strategy sets priorities for the skills development of workers. The Sector Education and Training Authorities (SETA) and provincial offices of the Department of Labour will play key roles in transforming the vision of the strategy into reality.

Supervision is included as part of the contractor's general obligations for the administration and management of the Targeted Enterprises. However, training, coaching, guidance and mentoring are not included as part of the Contractor's general obligations unless specific provision to that effect has been made in the project specifications.

The Contractor shall, from the commencement of the contract, provide a structured development programme designed to improve the entrepreneurial and basic business management skills of identified Targeted Enterprises and hired labour, as well as to improve their specific task skills (construction skills) commensurate with the applicable levels of subcontract that will enable the Targeted Enterprises to achieve the successful execution and completion of their subcontracts. The ultimate objective of training, coaching, guidance and mentoring is to develop the Targeted Enterprises as far as their potential allows.

### **G9.2 Definitions**

#### **G9.2.1 Training**

Training refers to the process of teaching a learner – usually in a classroom or simulated work environment situation. Training usually takes place with one teacher/trainer and several learners. Principles and theory are taught. Demonstrations are given. Assignments are then set to ensure that the learner is able to apply what has been taught. Training is done by a specialist in the subject, who is also qualified to train.

Example: Use of a dumpy level

Training would involve the theory of how a dumpy level works and how to calculate levels. A demonstration of how to set up and read a level could be given.

#### **G9.2.2 Coaching**

Coaching refers to hands-on training and is mostly on a one-on-one basis of tangible and measurable skills. It is typically on-site training, or learning-on-the-job. Coaching is training by the process of "watch-do-correct-practice". The coach does the task while the learner watches and asks questions. Then the learner does the same task while the coach watches. The learner is corrected until the coach feels that he has the gained competence in the function. The learner is then left to practise the task or skill, which the coach oversees. Coaching is imparting a skill – usually manual or physical. A coach is usually a person doing the same type of work on a higher or more competent level, or a person who has a mastery of the skill/task. While training gives the theory or shows/explains the principles, coaching helps the learner become competent and master a skill. A coach is often in the direct reporting line, i.e. someone in authority. Coaching could be part of the management function and would make the job run more smoothly.

Example: Use of a dumpy level

Coaching would involve taking the learner onto site, setting up a dumpy level, reading levels. Then the coach would get the learner to do the job, while the coach checked the setting up and reading. Once the learner understands and can do the tasks, the coach checks periodically to ensure the learner is still doing the job properly.

The desired outcome of coaching is for the learner to "fit-the-mould", and to do things the same way and to the same standard as the coach.

### **G9.2.3 Guidance**

Guidance is anticipating where one might go wrong, or where one is doing a task in a complicated, inefficient or ineffective way, and giving advice as to how to achieve a better result. Guidance is mostly given by a person in the direct reporting line but can be given by anyone. Guidance is not imparting skills but suggesting ways to improve performance.

Example: Use of a dumpy level

A person who knows how to use a dumpy level would be given guidance as to where he would next set up the level to limit the number of set-ups. Guidance could be an extension of coaching.

### **G9.2.4 Mentoring**

Mentoring is developing a person on a long-term career path. It is mostly about imparting skills that are often intangible and non-measurable. A mentor is seldom anyone in the direct reporting line – although he could be a person several levels higher in that reporting line. Mentoring is more about developing a relationship and taking a personal interest in an individual. A mentor looks out for that individual and gives him advice that cannot be found in a book or in the normal course of business. The sort of issues a mentor discusses with the protégé include company politics, how to pick up work before others get wind of it, how to position one's company to get a better competitive advantage, how to tender such that the tender is lowest but the profit is as good as or better than the next person, how to determine and assess risk. Mentoring helps the protégé think strategically, sharpen entrepreneurial skills and grow – both personally and in terms of the company. A mentor helps the protégé to develop insight and shrewdness. It is more about business skills to survive long-term than the technical, tactical or day-to-day activities of doing business.

The desired outcome of mentoring is for the protégé to develop his own style, i.e., to shape his own "mould".

### **G9.2.5 Supervision**

Supervision is instruction regarding the work to be performed, and ensuring it is carried out to specification and to the satisfaction of the supervisor. It is not instruction on how the work is to be performed, but rather on what work has to be performed, and usually has specific time frames.

## **G9.3 Assessment of Targeted Enterprise potential**

It is the responsibility of the Contractor to determine the level of development required by each Targeted Enterprise. This will require that the Contractor determine the level at which the Targeted Enterprise can operate competently and determine the skills already acquired by the Targeted Enterprise in terms of training and on-the-job experience. In some circumstances Adult Basic Education Training (ABET) will need to be started before any formal training can commence. The assessment of each appointed Targeted Enterprise is to be produced by the Contractor for discussion with the Employer at a meeting following the appointment of the Targeted Enterprise.

## **G9.4 Development Plan**

Within a month of the meeting with the Employer on the Targeted Enterprise assessments, the Contractor is to present a development plan, specific to each Targeted Enterprise. The development plan is to be reviewed by the Employer for appropriateness before being implemented.

The development plan is to include the following:

- (i) specify the development needs of each Targeted Enterprise contracting entity – the systems the entity lacks;
- (ii) specify the development needs of the individuals comprising the entity – the skills the individuals within the entity lack;



- (iii) the level to which that activity will be developed within the period of the contract;
- (iv) whether training, coaching, guidance and/or mentoring is to be given in each activity; and
- (v) the person/s responsible for each activity.

#### **G9.5 Identification and general training of potential Targeted Enterprises**

- (a) The progression of training, coaching and mentorship may need to start with the identification and general training of identified Targeted Enterprises and hired labour, and should end with their acquisition of sufficient management skills that will equip them to compete confidently for subcontract work beyond the duration of this contract. In addition, generic skills shall be taught where the need for these has been identified as being necessary amongst Targeted Enterprise workforces and hired labour.
- (b) Before commencing with any structured training, the Contractor shall submit his intended programme to the Employer for approval of its subject content and proposed trainers, and the Contractor shall, if so, instructed by the Employer, alter or amend the programme and/or course content.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the provision of everything necessary for the delivery of the various training workshops and modules including:

- (i) provision of a suitable fully serviced training venue facility;
- (ii) procurement of suitable accredited trainers;
- (iii) provision, in conjunction with the accredited trainers, of all the necessary training materials, including stationery and study materials; and
- (iv) transportation of the learners to and from the training venue facility (it is therefore in the Contractor's interest that the training venue facility be provided on the site in order to reduce these transportation costs).

Payment to the Contractor for carrying out the training function shall be effected through the pay items provided in this Part G, using the training facility provided under Part F: Expanded Public Works Programme.

#### **G9.6 Activities**

The tasks for each of the activities making up the development plan include material, equipment and general tasks, for training on technical, contractual, financial, human resources, legislative and general administrative functions.

The Construction Manager, site clerk and HR Manager will train/coach or mentor the above listed functions as part of on-site training.

#### **G9.7 Portfolio of Evidence**

The Contractor is to develop and/or maintain a portfolio of evidence for each Targeted Enterprise. The Portfolio of Evidence is a collection of proof of the training, coaching, guidance and mentoring inputs provided to the Targeted Enterprise and is similar to a log book used by technical students completing experiential training. It is a living document which records the development progress of the Targeted Enterprise and will need to be updated continually throughout the duration of the contract. It remains the property of the Targeted Enterprise who must take it to their next contract.

The Portfolio of Evidence should include the following documentation:

- (i) the development path designed for each Targeted Enterprise;
- (ii) the training courses completed by the Targeted Enterprise;
- (iii) the hours of guidance, coaching and mentoring received for each activity listed in the development plan;
- (iv) a list of outcomes achieved at each level for each activity;
- (v) six-monthly progress reports on the development provided (inputs) versus the actual progress made (output) by the Targeted Enterprise; and
- (vi) a list of competencies.

### **G9.8 Training Requirements**

Only qualified trainers employed by training agencies that are accredited by the relevant Sector Education and Training Authorities (SETA), or other institutions recognised by the Department of Labour shall deliver any training. "Accredited training" refers to both the trainers as well as to the training material. Certificates affirming the successful participation in the various courses shall be presented to each attendant.

The Contractor shall facilitate in the delivery of training by instructing and motivating the hired labour and relevant Targeted Enterprises regarding attendance and participation. All training shall take place within normal working hours, or as agreed with the trainees.

### **G9.9 Development training**

The Contractor will arrange training to support the development of the Targeted Enterprise. This training must be provided by training providers accredited with the relevant SETA pertaining to the course material being presented. The training will take place at hours agreed with the trainees, possibly on a part time basis after hours.

The following training courses are recommended to support the development programme detailed in the contract document:

- (i) NQF Level 2: Construction Contractor - Business owner and administration officer;
- (ii) Tender training NQF Level 3 – Business owner / Technical expert;
- (iii) Computer literacy training - Business owner and admin officer – Microsoft Windows, email, Microsoft Word and Microsoft Excel;
- (iv) General bookkeeping relevant to construction - Business owner and admin officer;
- (v) Tendering NQF Level 4 and 5 – Business owner / Technical expert; and
- (vi) Construction supervision (Roadworks) NQF Level 4 – Business owner / Technical expert.

### **G9.10 Safety Training**

The Targeted Enterprise's safety representative is to be fully trained in all aspects of safety and his duties in this regard. The owner of the Targeted Enterprise is to be trained on his responsibilities regarding safety regulations.

### **G9.11 Construction skills training**

The focus of training provided on the contract should be to support the development of the Targeted Enterprise subcontractor. Construction skills training will only be approved by the Employer when appropriate.

The Targeted Enterprise, their workforce and hired labour that are selected will be entitled to receive structured training that will improve on-task skills necessary for the execution and successful completion of the works. The Contractor, in conjunction with the Employer, shall monitor the progress of the hired labour and each Targeted Enterprise closely and shall identify those who, in their collective opinion, will benefit from structured construction skills training as may be provided for in the contract, and where required by the Employer shall make recommendations in this regard. The final list of candidates shall be decided between the Contractor and the Employer, and those selected shall receive formal construction skills training in a programmed and progressive manner throughout the duration of the contract.

The training programme shall offer complete courses that could comprise some or all of the following modules:

- (i) Use and maintenance of hand tools;
- (ii) Operation of equipment;
- (iii) Manufacture and installation of minor precast concrete units;
- (iv) Erect, dismantle and maintain formwork;
- (v) Basic concrete skills;
- (vi) Excavation, backfill and compaction;
- (vii) Bricklaying; and
- (viii) Erosion protection using stone pitching, gabions or reos.

#### **G9.12 Training venue facility**

The training venue facility to be provided by the Contractor is described in clause F5.6 of Part F. This facility shall be used to deliver all training, irrespective of whether it is delivered in terms of Part F or Part G of the Particular Specifications.

### **C3.3 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS**

**PART H: CIDB CONTRACT SKILLS DEVELOPMENT GOAL (CSDG)**

**PART H: CIDB CONTRACT SKILLS DEVELOPMENT GOAL (CSDG)**

**H1. SCOPE**

This part provides the specifications with regard to the following:

- (a) The Contract Skills Development Goals as per the Standard for developing skills through infrastructure contracts, 2020 as gazetted in the Government Gazette No. 43495, 3 July 2020.

The below specifications are intended as a guide and are to be read in conjunction with the above-mentioned standards for the implementation of the programme.

**H2. STANDARD FOR DEVELOPING SKILLS THROUGH INFRASTRUCTURE CONTRACTS**

The South African government requires that its considerable expenditure on the delivery, maintenance and operation of infrastructure (fixed assets that are constructed or result from construction operations) contribute to an increase in the number of people who have part or full occupational qualifications registered on the NQF or professional designations awarded by professional bodies or statutory councils.

The CIDB B.U.I.L.D Standard for developing skills through infrastructure contracts has been prepared to leverage contributions towards the increase of the pool of qualified skilled people, and where required professionally registered, through training on professional services, services, design and build or engineering and construction works contracts associated with such expenditure. This standard establishes a minimum contract skills development goal which is to be achieved in the performance of a contract in relation to the provision of different types of workplace opportunities linked to work associated with a contract which culminate in or lead to:

- a) a part or full occupational qualification registered on the National Qualification Framework;
- b) a trade qualification leading to a listed trade (GG No. 35625, 31 August 2012);
- c) a national diploma registered on the National Qualification Framework; and
- d) registration in a professional category by one of the professional bodies listed in Table 1 below.

**Table 1: Categories of registration**

<b>PROFESSION</b>	<b>CATEGORY OF REGISTRATION</b>	<b>ACT</b>
Construction project management	Construction Project Manager	Project and Construction Management Professions Act of 2000 (Act No. 48 of 2000)
Engineering	Engineer, Engineering Technologist, Engineering Technician or Certificated Engineer	Engineering Profession Act of 2000 (Act No. 46 of 2000)

The Contractor shall be responsible for achieving the contract skills development goal and are provided with a number of methods for measuring their achievements. They may, if need be, devolve their obligations onto subcontractors.

**H3. REQUIREMENTS**

**H3.1 CONTRACT SKILLS DEVELOPMENT GOAL (CSDG)**

**H3.1.1** The contractor shall attain or exceed the contract skills development goal of 0.25% in the performance of the contract or the execution of an order.

**H3.1.2** Where required in terms of the contract, a specified proportion of the learners and candidates

shall be selected from persons in the employ of the state who meet the relevant eligibility criteria for the relevant programme.

**H3.1.3** Where required in terms of the contract or order, the employer shall advise the contractor of the types of training to be undertaken by the learners and candidates based on the needs and requirements of the candidate's qualifications.

### **H3.2 ACHIEVING THE CONTRACT SKILLS DEVELOPMENT GOAL (CSDG)**

**H3.2.1** The contractor shall achieve the measurable contract skills development goal by providing opportunities to learners requiring structured workplace learning using one or a combination of any of the following in relation to work directly related to the contract

**Method 1:** structured workplace learning opportunities for learners towards the attainment of a part or a full occupational qualification;

**Method 2:** structured workplace learning opportunities for apprentices or other artisan learners towards the attainment of a trade qualification leading to a listed trade (GG No. 35625, 31 August 2012) subject to at least 60% of the artisan learners being holders of public TVET college qualifications;

**Method 3:** work integrated learning opportunities for University of Technology or Comprehensive University students completing their national diplomas;

**Method 4:** structured workplace learning opportunities for candidates towards registration in a professional category by a statutory council listed in Table 1 above.

**H3.2.2** Employed learners may not account for more than 33 percent of the contract skills development goal.

**H3.2.3** Not more than one method may be applied to any individual concurrently in the calculation of the contract skills development goal.

### **H3.3 CONTRACT SKILLS DEVELOPMENT GOAL CREDITS**

**H3.3.1** Contract skills development credits will not be awarded for learners enrolled as beneficiaries of other funded or subsidised programmes.

**H3.3.2** In the case of engineering and construction works, design and build and services contracts:

- a) The contract skills development goals shall be granted by multiplying the number of people employed by the contractors and placed for continuous training opportunities in a three-month period by the notional values contained in Table 3 as published in the Standard for developing skills through infrastructure contracts, 2020 as gazetted in the Government Gazette No. 43495, 3 July 2020, or as revised in a Gazette notice.
- b) The contractor may source beneficiaries of the contract skills development goal from the cidb Skills Development Agency (SDA).
- c) All beneficiaries of the Standard must be registered with the cidb SDA.

### **H3.4 DENIAL OF CREDITS**

Credits towards the contract skills development goal shall be denied should:

- a) the opportunities not be provided on site or the opportunities cannot be directly linked to the contract;
- b) Failure to register all beneficiaries of the Standard be with the cidb SDA;
- c) Failure to submit a copy of the final contract compliance training report within 15 days of practical completion;

- d) the following not be provided:
  - 1) the required contract compliance baseline plan, an interim contract compliance report or a final contract compliance report;
  - 2) the required mentorship plan for a candidate not be provided;
  - 3) the required training plan for learners not be provided;
  - 4) the training reports covering a period not be provided;
  - 5) the required records, specified documents and signatures not be provided;
  - 6) the structured mentorship is found not to be in accordance with the requirements of the applicable professional body, statutory council or qualifying authority;
  - 7) the structured workplace learning is found not to be in accordance with the curriculum requirements of the part qualification or occupational qualification or prescription for professional registration for which the learner is registered;
- e) conditions of employment and rates of allowances for learners not be in accordance with legislative provisions; and
- f) the contractor does not maintain the required training records, or an audit reveals that there is insufficient information to substantiate claims for credits.
- g) the contractor claims credits for learners enrolled as beneficiaries on programmes that are funded or subsidised from another source.
- h) the contractor fails to provide sufficient evidence of disciplinary actions taken against a learner who fails to present their interim reports or credentials for assessment when they have had sufficient structured work experience or structured mentorship to do so.

#### **H4 COMPLIANCE WITH REQUIREMENTS**

##### **H 4.1 GENERAL**

**H 4.1.1** The contractor shall submit to the employer's representative:

- a) within 30 days of the contract coming into effect or the issuing of an order, a contract compliance baseline training plan taking into account the skills mix and type of workers that are to be engaged;
- b) interim contract compliance training reports at intervals which do not exceed 3 months; and
- c) a final contract compliance training report within 15 days of reaching practical completion of the construction works.

**H4.1.2** The information contained in the final contract compliance training report shall include the contract skills development goal achieved (in Rands or in hours) in the performance of the contract and a breakdown of the goal achieved in respect of the following:

- a) the name and contact details of the SDA,
- b) the skills mix and skills types achieved on the contract; and
- c) the names, ID numbers and period of employment of each learner and
- d) candidate.

**H4.1.3** The contractor shall keep records of the hours worked and registration particulars towards compliance with this standard. The contractor shall allow the employer's representative to inspect or audit such training records at any time.

**H4.1.4** The employer's representative shall undertake suitable random audits on records to confirm compliance with requirements.

**H4.1.5** The learners shall be directly employed by the contractor or SDA. The contractor shall enter into a contract agreement with the cidb SDAs, training provider or skills development facilitator of their choice participating in the implementation of this standard to:

- a) prepare training plans for registered learners, including details of the scope of experiential

- work to be covered and expected outcomes;
- b) register learners with the appropriate Sector Education and Training Authority established in terms of the Skills Development Act of 2008 (Act 37 of 2008);
  - c) manage learner registration with appropriate trade testing authorities as well as preparation for the trade test;
  - d) liaise with the supervisor to monitor onsite training progress of learners;
  - e) liaise with the supervisor to arrange for summative assessments at appropriate stages of the training; and
  - f) liaise with the supervisor to prepare reports for the employer or employer's representative.

#### **H4.2 STRUCTURED WORKPLACE LEARNING OPPORTUNITIES FOR LEARNERS**

**H4.2.1** Structured workplace learning opportunities shall be aligned to the curriculum requirements set for the particular part or full occupational qualification or professional designation for which the learner is registered.

**H4.2.2** A responsible supervisor will be appointed to allocate learning tasks, under the guidance of a competent person, to learners in line with their training plans.

**H4.2.3** Mentoring associated with structured workplace learning for artisan learners shall be undertaken by an artisan in the applicable trade with a minimum of 3 years of trade specific experience. The number of artisan learners mentored by a single mentor shall, unless otherwise permitted by the National Artisan Moderation Body, not exceed 4 at any one time.

**H4.2.4 Supervision** associated with structured workplace learning for learners leading to a part or full occupational qualification other than artisan learners shall be undertaken by a person qualified in the applicable discipline with a minimum of 3 years of post qualification experience.

**H4.2.5** The contractor shall submit to the employer's representative, in respect of each learner:

- a) within one month of commencing work directly related to the contract or order, a workplace training plan together with name of the learner's mentor and supervisor;
- b) within one month of commencing work directly related to the contract or order:
  - 1) proof of registration as a learner with the relevant SETA where applicable; and
  - 2) a copy of the mentorship agreement entered into with the learner or the company mentorship agreement entered into with the relevant qualified agency;
- c) within two weeks of updating a workplace training plan, the revised workplace training plan;
- d) a quarterly progress report and a final report at the end of the structured mentorship period including a log of exposure and interactions with the mentor in sufficient detail to demonstrate compliance with requirements, signed off by the mentor, the supervisor and the learner.

**H4.2.6** Learners shall be required by the mentor to complete training reports required by the relevant qualifying authority whenever a substantial activity or training period has been completed.

**H4.2.7** The mentor and supervisor shall sign off all reports and logbooks to allow the learner to move to other projects or employment and continue the path towards a qualification.

#### **H4.3 STRUCTURED WORKPLACE LEARNING FOR CANDIDATES**

**H4.3.1** Mentoring associated with structured workplace learning for candidates shall be in accordance with the prescripts of the relevant professional body or statutory council.

**H4.3.2** The contractor shall:

- a) appoint a supervisor who is actively engaged in work directly associated with the contract to issue tasks, oversee their implementation and provide input to the candidate on an on-going basis;



- b) identify a suitable mentor for the candidate. If the contractor does not have an inhouse mentor, the contractor shall enter into a mentoring agreement with the candidate and an external company as required by the professional body or statutory council; and
- c) issue each candidate with a portfolio of evidence file which is to be kept up to date with all the documentation issued or prepared including the workplace training plan and all revisions thereof as well as copies of the logbook entries and training experience reports.

**H4.3.3** The mentor shall from time to time provide an updated workplace training plan for a candidate outlining the activities in which the candidate will be involved, including activities required by the relevant professional body or statutory council. The mentor shall require candidates to maintain a logbook issued by the relevant professional body or statutory council. The mentor shall sign off such logbook at quarterly presentations and progress review meetings.

NOTE: The mentor should ensure where the duration of the contract or order exceeds the minimum time to register in a professional category of registration that candidates are exposed to the full range of activities and work towards assuming the full level of responsibility recommended by the relevant professional body or statutory council. This may require rotations and secondments.

**H4.3.4** The contractor shall submit to the employer's representative, in respect of each candidate:

- a) within one month of commencing work directly related to the contract or order:
  - 1) a workplace training plan together with name of the candidates' mentor and supervisor;
  - 2) proof of registration as a candidate with the relevant professional body or statutory council; and
  - 3) register all beneficiaries of the Standard with the cidb SDA
- b) within one month of commencing work directly related to the contract or order a copy of the mentorship agreement entered into with the candidate or the company mentorship agreement entered into with a professional body or statutory council;
- c) within two weeks of updating a workplace training plan, the revised workplace training plan;
- d) quarterly progress reports and a final report at the end of the structured mentorship period including a log of exposure and interactions with the mentor in sufficient detail to demonstrate compliance with requirements, signed off by the mentor, the supervisor and the candidate.

**H4.3.5** Candidates shall be required by the mentor to complete training reports required by the relevant professional body or statutory council whenever a substantial activity or training period has been completed.

**H4.3.6** The mentor and supervisor shall sign off all reports and logbooks to allow the candidate to move to other projects or employment and continue on the path towards registration where the work related to the contract ends for whatever reason prior to the candidate gaining sufficient experience for registration.

## H5 RECORDS

**H5.1** The contractor shall submit all the documentation required in terms of clause 4 in a timely manner and according to a prescribed format where applicable. The contractor shall submit to the Employer's Representative the following proformas:

- Form A2 Baseline Training Plan
- Form A3 Project Interim Report
- Form A5 Project Completion Report

**H5.2** The employer's representative shall certify the value of the credits counted towards the contract skills development goal, if any, whenever a claim for payment is issued to the employer and shall notify the contractor of this amount.

**H5.3** The contractor shall, upon termination of the opportunities provided in order to satisfy the contract skills development goal, certify the quantum and nature of the opportunity

and submit the certificate, counter-certified by the relevant individual, to the employer's representative for record-keeping purposes.

#### H5.4 PRO-FORMA DOCUMENTS

The following Annexures are contained at the end of Part G Specifications and shall be used by the contractor in relation to all the reporting requirements.

- Annexure 1 - Form A1 List of Recognised Skills Development Agencies
- Annexure 2 - Form A2 Baseline Training Plan
- Annexure 3 - Form A3 Project Interim Report
- Annexure 4 - Form A4 Supervisor Agreement
- Annexure 5 - Form A5 Project Completion Report

#### H6 SANCTIONS

**H6.1** In the event that the contractor fails to substantiate that any failure to achieve the contract skills development goal was due to reasons beyond the contractor's control which may be acceptable to the employer, the sanctions provided for in the contract shall apply.

#### H7 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item	Unit
<b>H7.01 Payments associated with the Contract Skills Development Goals:</b>	
(a) Employment of Learners employed under Method 1	
(i) Provision for stipends.....	Number (No.)
(ii) Provision for additional Costs .....	Number (No.)
(b) Employment of Learners employed under Method 2	
(i) Provision for stipends.....	Number (No.)
(ii) Provision for additional Costs .....	Number (No.)
(c) Employment of Learners employed under Method 3	
(i) Provision for stipends.....	Number (No.)
(ii) Provisions for mentorship .....	Number (No.)
(iii) Provision for additional Costs .....	Number (No.)
(d) Employment of Candidates employed under Method 4	
(i) Provision for stipends.....	Number (No.)
(ii) Provisions for mentorship .....	Number (No.)
(iii) Provision for additional Costs .....	Number (No.)

- (e) Liaison with the Employer's project manager and the training service provider:
- (i) Liaison conducted by the Construction Manager.....hour (h)

The payment items under subitem H7.01(a)(i), (b)(i), (c)(i) and (d)(i) shall be the stipends associated with each Number of Students/Learners/Candidates employed under each methods for the duration of the projects and shall be used to cover the cost of stipend payments made by the Contractor to the participants of the Skills Development Programme, including any associated COIDA and UIF payments, all as authorised by the Employer's Agent.

Where an unemployed learner is employed directly by the contractor, the contractor shall pay the stipend directly to the learner.

Where an unemployed learner is sourced through an SDA, training provider or skills development facilitator the contractor must pay the stipend to the SDA, training provider or skills development facilitator who in turn will pay the learner.

The notional cost of providing training opportunities will be increase by CPI on an annual basis. The new, revised costs will be published on the cidb website on the 1st April in each year.

The amount under subitem H7.01(a)(ii), (b)(ii), (c)(iii) and (d)(iii) shall be used to cover all costs associated with the provision personal protective equipment, insurance, medical assessments, course fees and trade tools (where applicable) and storage thereof, assessment, moderation and monitoring of learners., all as authorised by the Employer's Agent.

The unit of measurement for subitems H7.01(e)(i) and (ii) shall be the hour. The tendered rates shall include full compensation for all costs related to the Construction for time spent at formal liaison meetings authorised and convened by the Employer's Agent for the specific purpose of liaising with the Employer's project manager and / or the training service provider. The payment shall be made only for the time spent in the formal meeting itself. No payment shall be made for time spent during any other on-site liaison, telephonic liaison, e-mail or written correspondence liaison between these parties, or for liaison conducted with the Employer's project manager and / or the training service provider by any other member of the Contractor's site staff or head office personnel, the cost of all of which shall be deemed to be included in the Contractor's time-related obligations under subitem C1.3.1.3

The unit of measure for subitems H7.01 (c)(ii) and (d)(ii) shall be the Number (No) of mentors employed by the contractor to provide any mentorship for students and candidates employed under method 3 and 4, all as authorised by the Employer's Agent, and shall cover all associated costs for mentorship including travelling, preparation of reports, preparation and review of training plans and any other costs associated with the Mentor fulfilling the requirements of Clause H4.3.

Table 3: The notional cost of providing training opportunities per quarter

The costs for providing training opportunities for this contract shall be as detailed in Table 3, and as published by CIDB on the Standards for Skills Development.

Type of Training Opportunity	Provision for stipends (Unemployed learners only)	Provisions for mentorship	Provisions for additional costs*	Total costs	
				Unemployed learners	Employed learners
<b>Method 1</b>					
Occupational qualification	R7 000	R0	R9 000	R16 000	R9 000
<b>Method 2</b>					
TVET College graduates	R14 000	R0	R9 000	R23 000	N/A
Apprenticeship	R14 000	R0	R12 000	R26 000	R12 000
<b>Method 3</b>					
P1 and P2 learners, or a 240 credits qualification	R24 000	R20 000	R4 500	R48 500	N/A
<b>Method 4</b>					
Candidates with a 360 credits qualification	R37 000	R20 000	R4 500	R61 500	R20 000
Candidates with 480 or more credits qualification	R47 000	R20 000	R4 500	R71 500	R20 000

**PART H: CIDB CONTRACT SKILLS DEVELOPMENT GOAL (CSDG)  
ANNEXURES**

**Annexure 1 Form A1 List of Recognised Skills Development Agencies**

CIDB Recognised Skills Development Agencies								
No	Name of SDA	SDA Registration Number	Status	Recognition Date End	Province	Contact Person	Contact Number	Email Address
01	CIDB SDA	SDA/ZA/16/00001	Active	01/04/2025	National	Pranveer Harriparsadh	012 482 7230	pranveerh@cidb.org.za
02						Thabelo Ramaru	012 482 7249	thabelor@cidb.org.za
03								
04								

Annexure 2 - Form A2 Baseline Training Plan

## CIDB SKILLS STANDARD BASELINE TRAINING PLAN

Contractor Details						
Contractor Name:						
CRS Number:						
Estimated start date						
Estimated Completion date						
Size of Organisation	Small (1-49 employees)	Medium (50-149 employees)	Large (≥ 150 employees)			

Contractor Contact Details	
Name of Contact Person	
Designation of Contact Person	
Contact Details	Cell Number:
	Landline Number:

<b>Contractor Contact Details</b>	
	Email address:

Contract Data				
Project Name				
CIDB Contract Number				
Name of Client:				
Project Description				
Final Tender Sum (at tender award)				
Project Location				
Project duration				
Estimated start date				
Estimated Completion date				
Description	Designation	Project Value	CSDG %	Min CSDG Target
Civil Eng.	CE		0.25	
General Building	GB		0.50	
Civil & General Building	CE & GB		0.375	
Electrical Eng.(Building)	EB		0.25	
Electrical Eng.(Infrastructure)	EP		0.25	
Mechanical Eng.	ME		0.25	
Specialist	SW		0.25	
Total				



Construction Skills Development Goal (CSDG) Baseline Training Plan					
Training Method	Number of Employed Learners	Number of Unemployed Learners	Area/s of Specialisation/Trade	Duration of Placement	Total Notional Cost
Method 1: Skills Programme					
Method 2: FET College Graduates/ Apprenticeship					
Method 3: P1 and P2 learners or a 240 credit qualification					
Method 4: Candidacy with 360 credit qualification					
<b>Total</b>					

Note: Refer to Table 3 in the Standard for Developing Skills through Infrastructure Contracts Government Gazette 43495 of 3 July 2020 for the notional costs

Contractor's Representative Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Designation: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Employer's Representative Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Designation: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

For Office Use for SDA				
Action	Status			
Project verified on CIDB Register of Projects (RoP)	Yes		No	
Training plans developed	Yes		No	
Appropriate learners available	Yes		No	
Target learners sent to contractor	Yes		No	
SDA processes explained to contractor	Yes		No	
Placement plan developed	Yes		No	
Training Method	Percentage (%) contribution to the CSDG			
Method 1				
Method 2				
Method 3				
Method 4				
Total				

**CIDB SDA Contact Person: Mr Pranveer Harriparsadh or Thabelo Ramaru**  
**Email address: [pranveerh@cidb.org.za](mailto:pranveerh@cidb.org.za) or [thabelor@cidb.org.za](mailto:thabelor@cidb.org.za) Tel. 012 482 7230/7249**

SDA Representative Name: \_\_\_\_\_ Designation: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

Annexure 3 - Form A3 Project Interim Report

**FORM A3: PROJECT INTERIM TRAINING REPORT**

Section A: Employer Information

ddb Employer Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
Employer Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Section B: Contract Data

ddb Contract Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
Contract Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
Tender Value (R): \_\_\_\_\_  
Contract Skills Development Goal (R): \_\_\_\_\_  
SIP Number (If Applicable): \_\_\_\_\_  
SIP Project Code (If Applicable): \_\_\_\_\_

**SECTION C: Definitions and Beneficiary Information**

**Training Methods:**  
**Method 1(M1):** structured workplace learning opportunities for learners towards the attainment of a part or a full occupational qualification;  
**Method 2(M2):** structured workplace learning opportunities for apprentices or other artisan learners towards the attainment of a trade qualification leading to a listed trade subject to at least 60% of the artisan learners being holders of public TVET college qualifications;  
**Method 3(M3):** work integrated learning opportunities for University of Technology or Comprehensive University students completing their national diplomas;  
**Method 4(M4):** structured workplace learning opportunities for candidates towards registration in a professional category by a statutory council listed in Table 1 in the CDB Standard for Developing Skills Through Infrastructure Contracts Gazette No. 43:495

Learner/Candidates Full Name and Surname	Gender	Ethnic Group						Identity Number	Training Method (Please tick)	Placement Start Date	Placement End Date	Occupation/Trade Description	Description of Practical Task Completed (as per logbook or POE)	Status	Supporting documents available on request (Yes, No or N/A)													
		Female	Black	White	Coloured	Indian	Other								Training Plan	Register	Signed Logbook/POE	Entry Medical Assessments	Exit Medical Assessment	Conducted Summative Assessment	Site Induction	Health and Safety Induction	Registered with Relevant SETA	PPF Register	Register Beneficiaries with CIB SDA			
Eg. Xolani Smith	1			1				1 2 3 4 5 6 7 4 5 6 8 9 1	X	2021-06-01	2021/09/31	Bricklaying	Read and interpret drawings Set out building as per drawing Transfer levels using dumpy level Batch and mix concrete	Completed In progress In progress Completed	Yes	Yes	Yes	N/A	No	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	

Section D: Declaration: Contractor Representative

Name of Contractor Rep: Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Initial: \_\_\_\_\_ Surname: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Designation: \_\_\_\_\_  
 e-mail: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mobile: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Office Telephone: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Date: \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_

I, the undersigned warrant that:  
 • I am duly authorised to submit this notice on behalf of the Contractor  
 • The contents of the notice are within my personal knowledge and are to the best of my belief both true and correct.

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Date completed: \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_

Section E: Declaration: Employer's Representative

Name of Representative: Title: \_\_\_\_\_ Initial: \_\_\_\_\_ Surname: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Designation: \_\_\_\_\_  
 e-mail: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Mobile: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Office Telephone: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Date: \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_

I, the undersigned warrant that:  
 • The contents of the notice are within my personal knowledge and are to the best of my belief both true and correct.

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Date completed: \_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_/\_\_\_\_

## Annexure 4 - Form A4 Supervisor Agreement

### Memorandum of understanding between Supervisor and Learner

The Contractor is responsible for the effective management of the learning opportunities provided through the cidb *Standard for the Development of Skills through Infrastructure Contracts* (cidb Skills Standard). The attainment of successful learning outcomes and professional development of the learners is largely dependent on the relationship between the assigned Supervisor and the Learner . As a participant in the implementation of the cidb Skills Standard you agree to the Supervisor relationship and commit to endeavour through the challenges of a construction project to give value to the training programme.

### The Responsibilities of a Supervisor to the Learner include:

- stimulating a passion for construction
- sharing technical and practical knowledge
- fostering the development of technical and leadership skills
- facilitating networking within the working community
- instilling an expectation of personal growth and learning by the Learner
- developing knowledge and understanding in the areas of health, safety, environment, quality and production
- inculcating professionalism and a desire for continual improvement by the Learner
- creating a nurturing relationship that instils a sense of discipline and professional pride
- giving constructive feedback and
- signing the Learners logbook.

Supervisor's name \_\_\_\_\_

Signature:

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**The Responsibilities of a Learner are:**

- adhere to the Host Employer's onsite rules and policies
- have an expectation of personal growth and learning
- to be enthusiastic and motivated
- to be open and accept supervision from the Supervisor and other colleagues
  
- to develop a thorough understanding of health, safety, environment, quality and production
- to have a positive attitude
- to display a strong sense of discipline and to be conscious of time
- to operate within the team
- to take the time to learn and practice new skills
- to make time to fill in your logbook and obtain the Supervisor's signature for completed tasks

Intern's Name: \_\_\_\_\_ ID No: \_\_\_\_\_

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_ Date: \_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

Annexure 5 - Form A5 Project Completion Report

FORM A5: FINAL TRAINING REPORT

Section A: Employer Information

cldb Employer Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
Employer Name: \_\_\_\_\_

Section B: Contract Data

cldb Contract Number: \_\_\_\_\_  
Contract Title: \_\_\_\_\_  
Tender Value (R): \_\_\_\_\_  
Contract Skills Development Goal (R): \_\_\_\_\_  
SP Number (If Applicable): \_\_\_\_\_  
SP Project Code (If Applicable): \_\_\_\_\_

SECTION C: Definitions and Beneficiary Information

**Training Methods:**  
Method 1(M1): structured workplace learning opportunities for learners towards the attainment of a part or a full occupational qualification;  
Method 2(M2): structured workplace learning opportunities for apprentices or other artisan learners towards the attainment of a trade qualification leading to a listed trade subject to at least 60% of the artisan learners being holders of public TVET college qualifications;  
Method 3(M3): work integrated learning opportunities for University of Technology or Comprehensive University students completing their national diplomas;  
Method 4(M4): structured workplace learning opportunities for candidates towards registration in a professional category by a statutory council listed in Table 1 in the CIDB Standard for Developing Skills Through Infrastructure Contracts Gazette No. 43495

Learner/Candidate's Full Name and Surname	Gender	Ethnic Group								Identity Number	Teaching Method (Please tick)	Placement Start Date	Placement End Date	Placement Duration	Occupation/Trade Description	Description of Practical Task Completed (as per logbook or POE)	Status	Supporting documents available on request (Yes, No or N/A)													
		Male	Female	Black	White	Coloured	Indian	Other	M1									M2	M3	M4	Training Plan	Attendance Register	Signed Logbook/POE	Entry Medical Assessments	Exit Medical Assessments	Conducted Summative Assessment	Site Induction	Health and Safety Induction	Registered with Relevant SETA	PPE Register	Register Beneficiaries with CIDB SDA
Eg. Xolani Smith	1		1								1		2021-06-01	2021-09-31	Bricklaying	Read and interpret drawings Set out building as per drawing Transfer levels using dumpy level Batch and mix concrete	Completed In progress Completed	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	N/A	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes	Yes	Yes

Section D: Declaration: Contractor Representative

Name of Contractor Rep: Title \_\_\_\_\_ Initials \_\_\_\_\_ Surname \_\_\_\_\_  
Designation: \_\_\_\_\_  
email: \_\_\_\_\_  
Mobile: 0 \_\_\_\_\_  
Office Telephone: 0 \_\_\_\_\_  
Date: [ ] / [ ] / [ ]

Signature: \_\_\_\_\_  
Date completed: [ ] / [ ] / [ ]

I, the undersigned warrant that:  
 • I am duly authorised to submit this notice on behalf of the Contractor  
 • The contents of this notice are within my personal knowledge, and are to the best of my belief both true and correct.

Section E: Declaration: Employer's Representative

Name of Representative: Title \_\_\_\_\_ Initials \_\_\_\_\_ Surname \_\_\_\_\_  
Designation: \_\_\_\_\_  
email: \_\_\_\_\_  
Mobile: 0 \_\_\_\_\_  
Office Telephone: 0 \_\_\_\_\_  
Date: [ ] / [ ] / [ ]

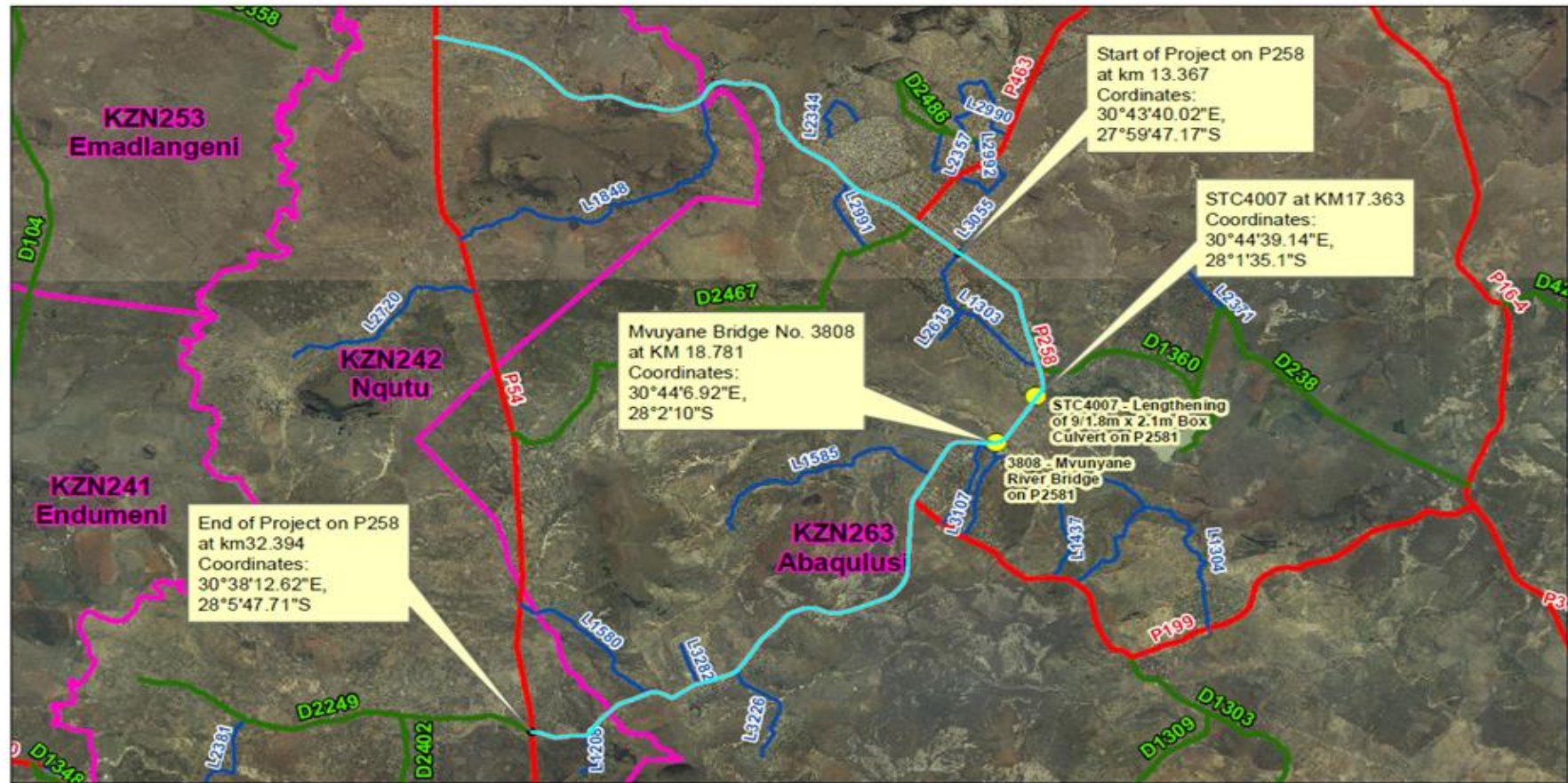
Signature: \_\_\_\_\_  
Date completed: [ ] / [ ] / [ ]

I, the undersigned warrant that:  
 • The contents of this notice are within my personal knowledge, and are to the best of my belief both true and correct.

## PART C4: SITE INFORMATION

<u>TABLE OF CONTENTS</u>	Page
C4.1 LOCALITY PLAN .....	C127
C4.2 EXAMPLE OF CONTRACT SIGNBOARD DETAILS .....	C128
C4.3 TRAFFIC INFORMATION .....	C129
C4.4 ANY OTHER RELEVANT TECHNICAL REPORTS .....	C130

**C4.1 LOCALITY PLAN**



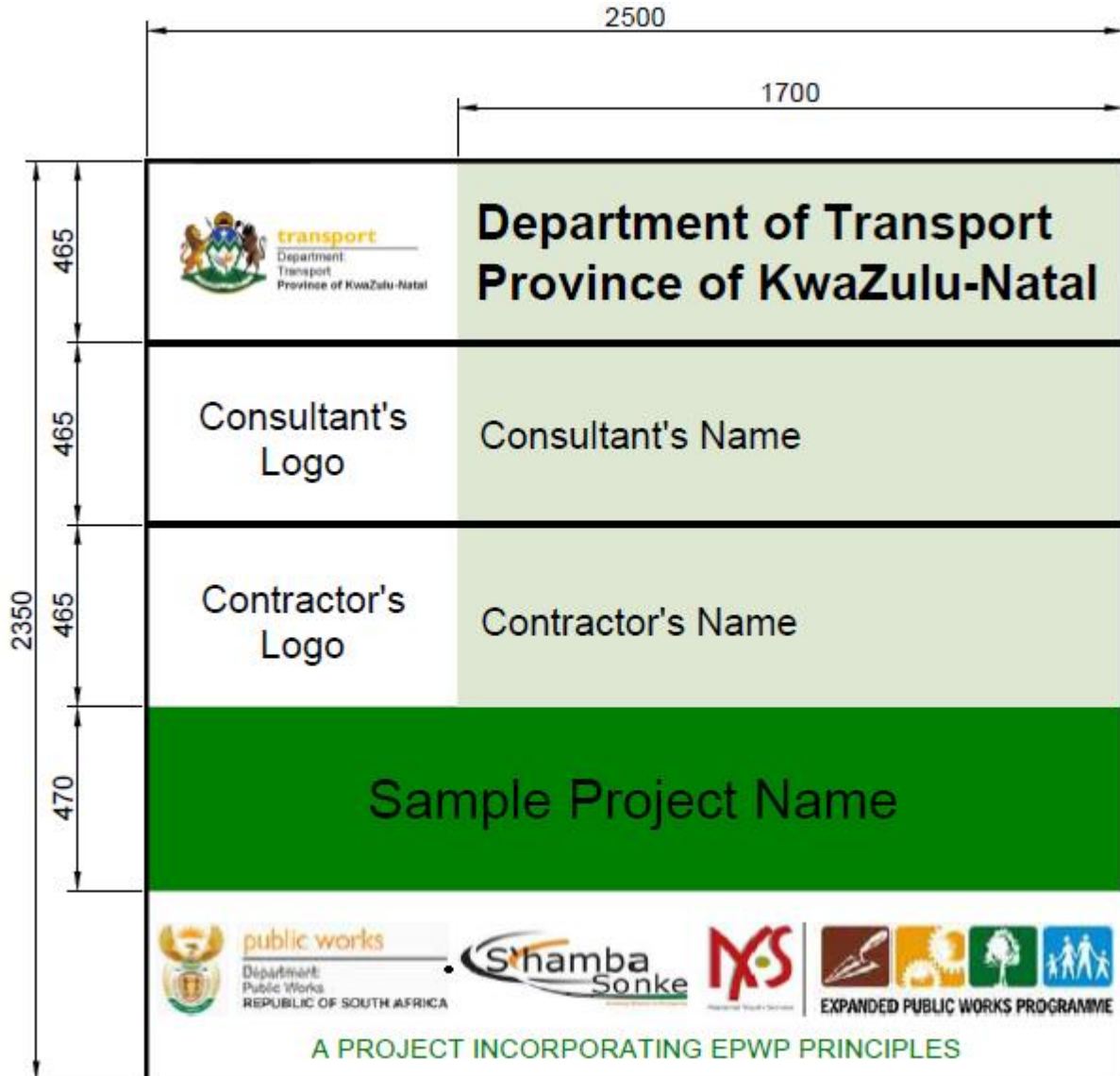
<b>Locality Map of P258 Abaqulusi Municipality</b>		<b>Legend</b> ● Bridges — Provincial Roads N L P — Local Municipalities	 Department of Transport PROVINCE OF KWAZULU-NATAL Road Information Services Tel: (033) 355 8815 Email: Oluwasegun.Radebe@kzntransport.gov.za	DATE
0 0.5 1 2 Kilometers	1:116 000			COORDINATE SYSTEM WGS 1984 UTM Zone 35S Projection: Mercator Reproduction:



**C4.2 EXAMPLE OF CONTRACT SIGNBOARD DETAILS**

**C4.2.2 CONTRACT SIGNBOARD FOR USE WHEN THE NYS PROGRAMME IS REQUIRED:**

Note: The “S’hamba Sonke” logo, as indicated below, shall appear on the signboard for Provincial Road Maintenance Grant (PRMG) contracts only. In all other cases it shall be omitted.



#### **C4.3 TRAFFIC INFORMATION**

Available Historical 12 Hour counts will be supplied by the Employer to the bidding entity. Appropriate traffic counts should be done for purposes of pavement design according to Departmental standards.

**C4.4 ANY OTHER RELEVANT TECHNICAL REPORTS**

VCI's, Existing Pavement structure, Historical Pavement design report, Maintenance History, Deflections, Historical Geotech report,

**ANNEXURE A: GUIDELINES FOR CONSTRUCTION  
AND MAINTENANCE PROJECTS DURING COVID-19 LOCKDOWN**



**transport**

Department:

Transport

Province of KwaZulu-Natal

---

# PROJECT SITE OCCUPATIONAL HEALTH AND SAFETY

## GUIDELINES FOR CONSTRUCTION AND MAINTENANCE PROJECTS DURING COVID-19 LOCKDOWN

Revision 1/1 July 2020

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>INTRODUCTION .....</b>	<b>C134</b>
1.1	BACKGROUND .....	C134
1.2	PURPOSE .....	C135
1.3	OBJECTIVES.....	C135
<b>2</b>	<b>RISK ASSESSMENT .....</b>	<b>C135</b>
2.1	BACK TO BASICS .....	C135
2.2	IMPLEMENTATION OF CONTROL MEASURES .....	C136
<b>3</b>	<b>SITE OPERATING PROCEDURES .....</b>	<b>C137</b>
3.1	SELF-ISOLATION.....	C137
3.2	IF SOMEONE FALLS ILL.....	C137
3.3	TRAVEL TO SITE .....	C137
3.4	SITE ACCESS POINTS .....	C138
3.5	HAND WASHING.....	C138
3.6	TOILET FACILITIES .....	C138
3.7	CANTEENS AND EATING ARRANGEMENTS.....	C138
3.8	CHANGING FACILITIES, SHOWERS AND DRYING ROOMS .....	C139
3.9	AVOIDING CLOSE WORKING .....	C139
3.10	GENERAL PRINCIPLES.....	C139
3.11	SITE MEETINGS .....	C139
3.12	CLEANING .....	C140
<b>4</b>	<b>CONSTRUCTION PROTOCOLS.....</b>	<b>C140</b>
4.1	PHYSICAL DISTANCING AND HYGIENE PROTOCOL .....	C141
4.2	SITE TRANSPORTATION PROTOCOL .....	C144
4.3	CLEANING PROTOCOL.....	C145
4.4	SCREENING AND MONITORING PROTOCOL .....	C147
	<b>ACRONYMS .....</b>	<b>C148</b>
	<b>KEY TERMS &amp; DEFINITIONS .....</b>	<b>C148</b>
	<b>APPENDIX A: SAFE PRACTICES ON SITE .....</b>	<b>C149</b>
	<b>APPENDIX B: SUSPECTED OR CONFIRMED CASE OF COVID-19.....</b>	<b>C150</b>
	<b>APPENDIX C: COVID-19 DAILY SYMPTOM MONITORING TOOL.....</b>	<b>C151</b>
	<b>APPENDIX D: COVID-19 BASELINE RISK ASSESSMENT .....</b>	<b>C152</b>

## Content of Figures

Figure 1: COVID-19 Alert Levels .....	134
Figure 2: Risk Exposures .....	135
Figure 3: Infection Control Strategies .....	136
Figure 4: Symptoms of COVID-19.....	137

# 1 INTRODUCTION

Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19) is a respiratory disease caused by the SARS-CoV-2 virus. In order to reduce the impact of COVID-19 on businesses, workers, customers and the public, the Kwazulu-Natal Department of Transport (KZNDOT), within the parameters of the COVID-19 regulatory framework, want to ensure that all those businesses, workers, customers and public it's interacting with are in compliance to the requirements as stipulated to ensure a safe work-environment for all.

On 23 April 2020, President Cyril Ramaphosa addressed the nation and announced that the country would resume economic activity in a phased approach from 1 May 2020. The lockdown levels depicted by Figure 1 below, will be lifted in phases, level 5 the highest and level 1 being the lowest as depicted below:

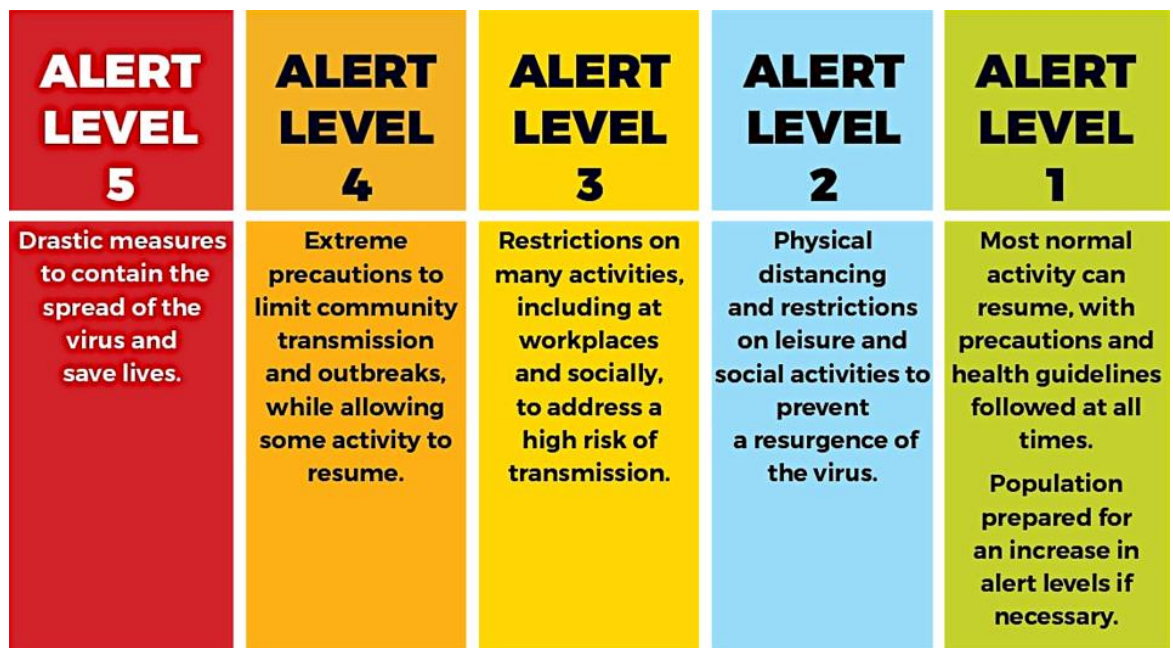


Figure 1: COVID-19 Alert Levels

## 1.1 BACKGROUND

Occupational Health and Safety are a fundamental segment of the construction industry. Safety must be embedded in all processes, implementing a top down approach, enabling the adoption of a safe and healthy working culture by all. Individual businesses or workplaces must have COVID-19 risk assessments and prevention and mitigation plans in place, and must conduct worker education on COVID-19 and protection measures:

- Identification and protection of vulnerable employees
- Safe transport of employees
- Screening of employees on entering the workplace
- Prevention of viral spread in the workplace
- Hand sanitisers and face masks
- Cleaning of surfaces and shared equipment
- Good ventilation
- Shift arrangements and canteen controls
- Managing sick employees

In addition to the above, monitoring systems must be in place to ensure compliance with safety protocols and to identify infections among employees.

## 1.2 PURPOSE

This document sets out the key principles and minimum requirements of the KZNDOT that define responsible, healthy and safe operations for road construction related operations working under COVID-19 Lockdown. The present state of the lockdown is geared toward the revival of economic activities and to allow employees involved in permitted services to resume work under certain conditions. This COVID-19 guidance has been developed on the basis of traditional infection prevention and occupational hygiene practices.

## 1.3 OBJECTIVES

The aims of this document are to:

- Keep workers and the wider public healthy and safe by preventing the spread of COVID-19.
- Apply relevant guidance from the Department of Health, Department of Employment and Labour and other Government Authorities to the construction environment.
- Encourage a safe and respectful work environment and good communication between all stakeholders.
- Sit alongside existing health and safety controls to ensure workers are safe on site.

Contractors and their employees should use this guidance to help identify risk levels on construction sites and to identify any appropriate control measures to be implemented. Additional guidance may be needed as the conditions of the COVID-19 outbreak change and as new information about the virus, its transmission and impact become available. It focuses on, as well as considerations for, the need for contractors to implement engineering, administrative and work practice controls and personal protective equipment (PPE).

## 2 RISK ASSESSMENT

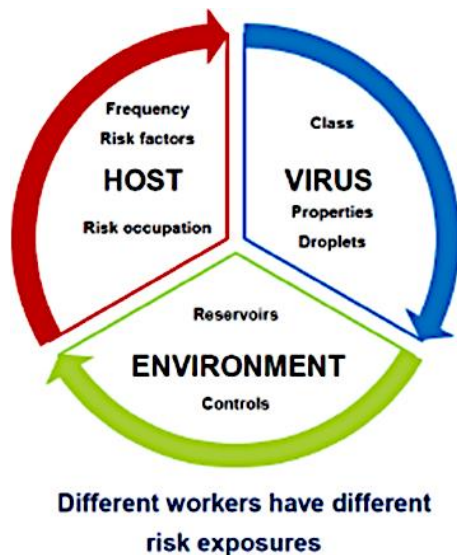


Figure 2: Risk Exposures

The legislation governing workplaces in relation to COVID –19 is the Occupational Health and Safety Act, Act 85 of 1993, as amended, and with the Hazardous Biological Agents Regulations and the Construction Regulation 2014. Section 8(1) of the Occupational Health and Safety Act, Act 85 of 1993, as amended, requires the employer to provide and maintain a working environment that is, to the extent possible reasonably practicable, as amended. Specifically, Section 8(2)(b) requires steps that may be reasonably practicable to eliminate or mitigate any hazard or potential hazard prior to the use of personal protective equipment (PPE).

### 2.1 BACK TO BASICS

Risk Assessment should be done to determine the **RISK** of **EXPOSURE** and to communicate this to the **WORKERS**.



## 2.2 IMPLEMENTATION OF CONTROL MEASURES

Before the implementation of control measures, current risk assessments need to be reviewed and updated, taking into account the new hazards posed by exposure to COVID-19 in the workplace. This is in accordance with Section 8 (2) (d) of the OHS Act.

With COVID-19, it may not be possible to eliminate the hazard, the most effective protection measures are engineering controls, administrative controls, safe work practices (a type of administrative control), and Personal Protection Equipment.

Measures for protecting workers from exposure to, and infection with, SARS-CoV-2, the virus that causes Coronavirus Disease 2019 (COVID-19), depend on the type of work being performed and exposure risk, including potential for interaction with people with suspected or confirmed COVID-19 and contamination of the work environment.

Contractors should adapt infection control strategies based on a thorough hazard assessment, using appropriate combinations of engineering and administrative controls, safe work practices, and personal protective equipment (PPE) to prevent worker exposures.

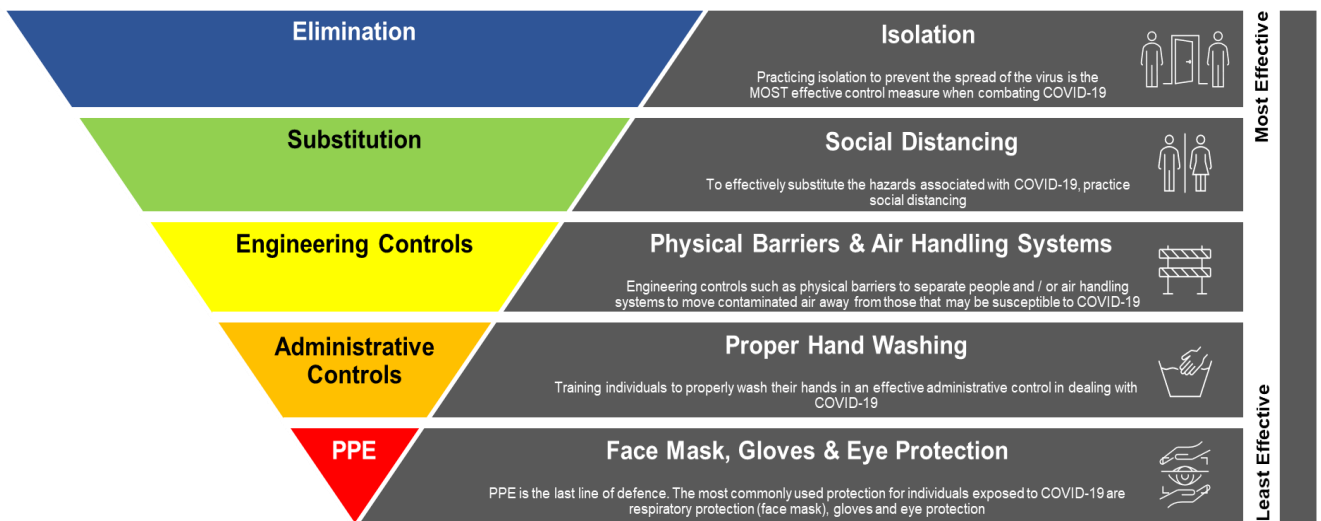


Figure 3: Infection Control Strategies

In preventing occupational exposure to COVID-19 also require Contractors to train workers on elements of infection prevention, including PPE. This would assist Contractors to identify:

- Exposure Levels
- “High Contact” Activities, and
- Vulnerable Workers and Special Measures

Contractors are expected to undertake and champion the principles of constantly focussing on eliminating or reducing the risk of COVID-19 transmission to an acceptable level, engaging meaningfully with their workforce, and making worker health a key priority. A Baseline Risk Assessment is included under Appendix D: COVID-19 Baseline Risk Assessment.

### 3 SITE OPERATING PROCEDURES

KZNDOT Construction sites operating during the Covid-19 pandemic need to ensure that they protect their workforce and minimise the risk of infection spread. In line with government guidelines on social distancing, this guideline is intended to implement effective steps at all KZNDOT construction sites of any size. These are extraordinary situations, and the KZNDOT intends to abide to the latest COVID-19 advice from national government.

#### 3.1 SELF-ISOLATION

Anyone who meets one of the following criteria should not come to site:

- Has a high temperature or a new persistent cough;
- Is a vulnerable person (by virtue of their age, underlying health condition, clinical condition or pregnancy); or
- Is living with someone in self-isolation or with a vulnerable person.

#### 3.2 IF SOMEONE FALLS ILL

If a worker develops a high temperature or a persistent cough while at work, they should:

- Return home immediately;
- Avoid touching anything; and
- Cough or sneeze into a tissue and put it in a bin, or if they do not have tissues, cough and sneeze into the crook or into the bent elbow.

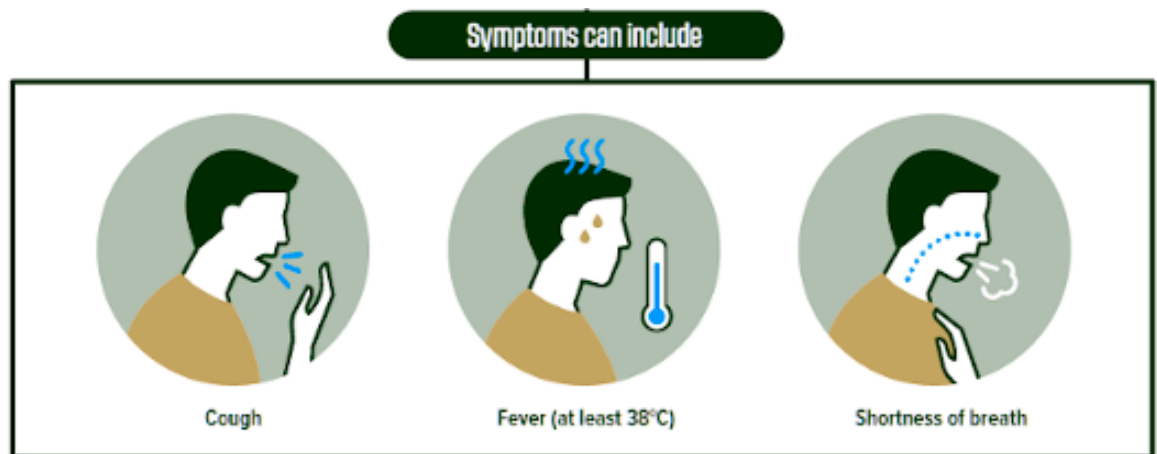


Figure 4: Symptoms of COVID-19

They must self-isolate and not return to work until their period of self-isolation has been completed and his or her negative status has been confirmed.

#### 3.3 TRAVEL TO SITE

Wherever possible workers should travel to site alone using their own transport, and construction sites need to consider:

- Parking arrangements for additional cars, taxis, buses, etc;
- Other means of transport to avoid public transport e.g. cycling;
- They must ensure disinfecting the alternative transport before and after use; and Public Transport Regulations in respect of COVID-19 are adhered to;

- Providing hand cleaning facilities at entrances and exits. This should be soap, water and paper towels (and not fabric towels) wherever possible or hand sanitiser if water is not available; and
- How someone detected vulnerable after screening, taken ill and would get transported home.

### **3.4 SITE ACCESS POINTS**

- Stop all non-essential visitors
- People, be it workers or visitors, without relevant face masks should not be allowed to enter construction sites; and workers should wear face masks at all times.
- Introduce staggered start and finish times to reduce congestion and contact at all times
- Monitor site access points to enable social distancing – you may need to change the number of access points, either increase to reduce congestion or decrease to enable monitoring
- Remove or disable entry systems that require skin contact e.g. fingerprint scanners
- Require all workers to wash or clean their hands before entering or leaving the site or as frequent as possible
- Allow plenty of space (two metres) between people waiting to enter site
- Regularly clean common contact surfaces in Site Office, Access Control and delivery areas e.g. scanners, turnstiles, screens, telephone handsets, desks, particularly during peak flow times
- Reduce the number of people in attendance at site inductions and consider holding them outdoors wherever possible
- Drivers should remain in their vehicles if the load will allow it and must wash or clean their hands before unloading goods and materials.

### **3.5 HAND WASHING**

- Provide additional hand washing facilities to the usual welfare facilities on a large spread out site or significant numbers of personnel on site
- Ensure soap, fresh water and paper towels is always readily available and kept topped up
- Provide hand sanitiser where hand washing facilities are unavailable
- Regularly clean the hand washing facilities and check soap and sanitiser levels
- Provide suitable and enough rubbish bins for hand paper towels with regular removal and disposal.
- Sites will need extra supplies of soap, hand sanitiser and paper towels and these should be securely stored.

### **3.6 TOILET FACILITIES**

- Restrict the number of people using toilet facilities at any one time e.g. use a welfare attendant
- Wash hands before and after using the facilities
- Enhance the cleaning regimes for toilet facilities particularly door handles, locks and the toilet flush handles or buttons
- Portable toilets should be avoided wherever possible, but where in use these should be cleaned and emptied more frequently
- Provide suitable and sufficient rubbish bins for hand towels with regular removal and disposal.

### **3.7 CANTEENS AND EATING ARRANGEMENTS**

Whilst there is a requirement for construction sites to provide a means of heating food and making hot drinks, these are exceptional circumstances and where it is not possible to introduce a means of keeping equipment clean between use, kettles, microwaves etc. must be removed from use.

The workforce should also be required to stay on site once they have entered it and not use local shops.

- Dedicated eating areas should be identified on site to reduce food waste and contamination
- Break times should always be staggered to reduce congestion and contact
- Hand cleaning facilities or hand sanitiser should be available at the entrance of any room where people eat and should be used by workers when entering and leaving the area
- The workforce should be asked to bring pre-prepared meals and refillable drinking bottles from home
- Workers should sit 2 metres apart from each other whilst eating and avoid all contact
- Where catering is provided on site, it should provide pre-prepared and wrapped food only
- Crockery, eating utensils, cups etc. should not be used
- Drinking water should be provided with enhanced cleaning measures of the tap mechanism introduced
- Tables should be cleaned between each use
- All rubbish should be put straight in the bin and not left for someone else to clear up
- All areas used for eating must be thoroughly cleaned at the end of each break and shift, including chairs, door handles, vending machines and payment devices.

### **3.8 CHANGING FACILITIES, SHOWERS AND DRYING ROOMS**

- Always introduce staggered start and finish times to reduce congestion and contact
- Introduce enhanced cleaning of all facilities throughout the day and at the end of each day
- Consider increasing the number or size of facilities available on site if possible
- Based on the size of each facility, determine how many people can use it at any one time to maintain a distance of 1 ½ metres
- Provide suitable and enough rubbish bins in these areas with regular removal and disposal.

### **3.9 AVOIDING CLOSE WORKING**

There will be situations where it is not possible or safe for workers to distance themselves from each other by 1.5 metres.

### **3.10 GENERAL PRINCIPLES**

- Non-essential physical work that requires close contact between workers should not be carried out
- Work requiring skin to skin contact should not be carried out
- Plan all other work to minimise contact between workers
- Re-usable PPE should be thoroughly cleaned after use and not shared between workers
- Single use PPE should be disposed of so that it cannot be reused
- Stairs should be used in preference to lifts or hoists
- Where lifts or hoists must be used:
  - Always lower their capacity to reduce congestion and contact
  - Regularly clean touchpoints, doors, buttons etc.
- Increase ventilation in enclosed spaces
- Regularly clean the inside of vehicle cabs and between use by different operators.

### **3.11 SITE MEETINGS**

- Only absolutely necessary meeting participants should attend
- Attendees should be two metres apart from each other
- Rooms should be well ventilated / windows opened to allow fresh air circulation
- Consider holding meetings in open areas where possible.

### 3.12 SITE MEETINGS

Enhanced cleaning procedures should be in place across the site, particularly in communal areas and at touch points including:

- Taps and washing facilities
- Toilet flush and seats
- Door handles and push plates
- Handrails on staircases and corridors
- Lift and hoist controls
- Machinery and equipment controls
- Food preparation and eating surfaces
- Telephone equipment
- Keyboards, photocopiers and other office equipment

Rubbish collection and storage points should be increased and emptied regularly throughout and at the end of each day.

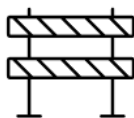
## 4 CONSTRUCTION PROTOCOLS

The core principle behind this “Construction Protocols” is to protect the health and safety of all workers required to perform duties during the COVID-19 crisis, including related health and safety impacts on operations related to operating under a COVID-19 environment, as well as protecting the wider KwaZulu-Natal population from transmission and spread of the virus.



Before  
arriving on  
Site

- Each Contractor must have a plan detailing the steps they will take to mitigate risks, including those presented by COVID-19. The details of the plan must be communicated to workers before they start work.
- Before any activity is recommenced the Contractor must ensure that all hazards have been reviewed and appropriately controlled before work activity is commenced after lockdown.
- Where possible, conduct a remote induction before arrival on site, this can be done via video conferencing or by phone.
- If an in-person induction is required, the **Physical Distancing and Hygiene Protocol** must be followed.
- All workers shall undergo a screening process to ensure they are fit for duty by confirming their health status.
- Contractors must understand how workers will travel to and from site and will communicate the **Site Transportation Protocol** to all.
- Ensure all workers understand when additional PPE may be required due to COVID-19 and that workers have access to the correct PPE as per the Department of Employment and Labour guidelines. When required to use face masks or gloves please follow these processes.



Site Entry

- Only relevant personnel to the workplace are to access the site.
- All office employees supporting a project will work remotely, where possible.
- A daily register of workers entering and leaving site must be completed along with a health declaration. Use your existing sign in register or the example Sign-in register.
- Signage reminding workers of the COVID-19 **Physical Distancing and Hygiene Protocol** will be posted at the site entrance and in common areas where appropriate.



Site  
Operations

- All work is to be undertaken in such a way as to reduce any possible contact between workers and to promote physical distancing wherever possible, as per the **Physical Distancing and Hygiene Protocol**.
- All visitors to the site, such as necessary delivery workers, will be restricted to one person wherever possible. These workers must follow the **Site Transportation Protocol**.
- All offices and jobsites must implement cleaning measures as per the **Cleaning Protocol**.
- All tools, equipment, plant and vehicles must be used in alignment with the **Cleaning Protocol**.
- Toolbox talks should be held with physical distancing in place as per the **Physical Distancing and Hygiene Protocol**.
- Additional sanitary measures are to be implemented on site to prevent the spread of COVID-19 e.g. hand washing stations, provision of additional hand sanitizer, provision of disinfectant wiping products, as per the **Physical Distancing and Hygiene Protocol**.
- Smokers must follow the **Physical Distancing and Hygiene Protocol**.
- A COVID-19 Response plan must be available and accessible on site.



Leaving Site

- Workers must use the sign-in register to sign out.
- When returning home, workers will need to follow the necessary hygiene measures.
- Each site must be cleaned and sanitised at the end of the working day or end of each shift, as per the **Cleaning Protocol**.
- All waste and disposable PPE must be removed from site and securely disposed of as per the **Cleaning Protocol**.
- Workers must follow the **Site Transportation Protocol**.

## 4.1 PHYSICAL DISTANCING AND HYGIENE PROTOCOL

Physical distancing, also known as “social distancing”, is about keeping a safe distance from others. For physical distancing, at least one and ½ metre’s separation is required at work, and two metres in uncontrolled environments, like in public. This aligns with World Health Organisation advice. We expect one and ½ metre’s separation between people at work as the minimum and greater separation where it is reasonably practicable to do so. This is important to help protect us from COVID-19, which spreads via droplets from coughing and sneezing.

### General Working Arrangements

- Keep team sizes as small as possible.
- Keep a record of who is in each team every day as it is required to assist contact tracing.
- Site teams are encouraged to put forward split/alternating shifts to avoid extensive intermingling to reduce potential of exposure.
- Work site is always to be segregated into zones (or by other methods) as much as possible to keep different teams/trades physically separated.
- Where possible, a one-way system in high-traffic areas, such as lifts, stairwells and scaffolds (Where Applicable).
- Where practical, all office employees supporting a project, work remotely.
- When using a vehicle, the **Cleaning Protocol** needs to be followed.
- When using a vehicle, limit this to one/two person per vehicle if possible.

---

External Interfaces	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• One member of the crew nominated to receive supplies etc.</li><li>• Keep the engagement with the other person as brief as possible and maintain a two-metre physical distance.</li><li>• Ask for paperwork to be emailed rather than handed over as much as possible.</li><li>• If unavoidable, then either wear gloves when handling the item or wash hands before and after handling said items.</li></ul>
Site Entry	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Limit visitors to site wherever possible.</li><li>• Introduce staggered start and finish times where possible to reduce congestion and contact.</li><li>• Monitor site access points to enable physical distancing – you may need to change the number of access points, increase to reduce congestion or decrease to enable monitoring.</li><li>• Where entry systems that require skin contact, the Cleaning Guide must be followed.</li><li>• Require all workers to wash or clean their hands before entering and leaving the site.</li><li>• Allow plenty of space 1½ metres between people waiting to enter site.</li><li>• Regularly clean common contact surfaces in reception, office, access control and delivery areas e.g. scanners, turnstiles, screens, telephone handsets, desks, particularly during peak flow times.</li><li>• Where possible, conduct a remote induction before arrival on site, this can be done via video conferencing or by phone. If an in-person induction is required, reduce the number of people and hold them outdoors wherever possible.</li><li>• Delivery drivers should remain in their vehicles if the load will allow it and must wash or clean their hands before unloading goods and materials.</li><li>• Any sign in registers should be recorded by one person where possible – do not pass material around the group and minimise contact with any screens.</li></ul>
Site Meetings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Only absolutely necessary meeting participants should attend.</li><li>• Attendees should be two metres apart from each other</li><li>• Rooms should be well ventilated / windows opened to allow fresh air circulation.</li><li>• Hold meetings in open areas where possible.</li><li>• Meetings are to be held through teleconferencing or videoconferencing where possible.</li></ul>
Avoiding Close Working	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Risk assessments and method statements must be updated to include COVID-19 control measures.</li><li>• At least 1½ metre's separation is required at work. KZNDOT expect 1½ metre separation between people at work as the minimum and greater separation where it is reasonably practicable to do so.</li><li>• If it is not possible or safe for workers to distance themselves by one metre for a work activity, the works should not be carried out.</li><li>• Re-usable PPE should be thoroughly cleaned after use and not shared between workers.</li><li>• Single use PPE should be disposed of so that it cannot be reused.</li><li>• Stairs should be used in preference to lifts or hoists.</li><li>• Where lifts or hoists must be used:</li><li>• Lower their capacity to reduce congestion.</li><li>• Regularly clean touchpoints, doors, buttons etc.</li><li>• Increase ventilation in enclosed spaces</li></ul>

---

---

Toilet Facilities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Physical distancing rules apply to the use of shared facilities, including toilets.</li><li>• Wash hands before and after using the facilities.</li><li>• Enhance the cleaning regimes for toilet facilities particularly door handles, locks, toilet flush and sanitary bins.</li><li>• Provide suitable and sufficient rubbish bins for hand towels with regular removal and disposal.</li></ul>
Eating Measures	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If you need to leave site for any reason, follow site entry procedures on return.</li><li>• Dedicated eating areas should be identified on site to reduce food waste and contamination.</li><li>• Break times should be staggered to reduce congestion and contact at all times.</li><li>• Hand cleaning facilities or hand sanitiser should be available at the entrance of any room where people eat and should be used by workers when entering and leaving the area.</li><li>• The workforce should be asked to bring pre-prepared meals and refillable drinking bottles from home.</li><li>• Workers should sit 2 metres apart from each other whilst eating and avoid all contact.</li><li>• Where catering is provided on site, it should provide pre-prepared and wrapped food only.</li><li>• Shared crockery, eating utensils, cups etc. should not be used.</li><li>• Tables should be cleaned between each use.</li><li>• All rubbish should be put straight in the bin and not left for someone else to clear up.</li><li>• All areas used for eating must be thoroughly cleaned at the end of each break and shift, including chairs, door handles.</li><li>• Limit access and use of water fountains.</li><li>• Consider numbers on site for site facilities as physical distancing may require additional space/facilities.</li></ul>
Changing Facilities, Showers and Drying Rooms	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Introduce staggered start and finish times to reduce congestion and contact at all times.</li><li>• Introduce enhanced cleaning of all facilities throughout the day and at the end of each day.</li><li>• Consider increasing the number or size of facilities available on site if possible.</li><li>• Based on the size of each facility, determine how many people can use it at any one time to maintain a distance of one metre.</li><li>• Provide suitable and sufficient rubbish bins in these areas with regular removal and disposal.</li></ul>
General Hygiene	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Each worker must sanitise their hands with hand sanitiser or soap and running water before entry onto site, use warm water if available.</li><li>• Set up a specific place near the entry of the site for handwashing and/ or sanitising.</li><li>• Any personal items brought to site by workers must be segregated (kept separate from other workers items).</li><li>• Individual PPE for workers must be kept separate from other workers PPE and cleaned correctly as per the <b>Cleaning Protocol</b>.</li><li>• All eating and drinking utensils to be cleaned by the user. Have paper towels accessible to dry.</li></ul>
Smoking	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Smokers/vapers must use designated area or do so off-site and butts are to be placed in the designated receptacle. Hands must be washed before and after smoking.</li><li>• Stand so that smoke or vapor produced is not going into another person's breathing zone.</li></ul>












---



- |              |  |
|--------------|--|
| Hand Washing | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Provide additional hand washing facilities to the usual welfare facilities on large, spread out sites or significant numbers of personnel on site.</li> <li>• Ensure soap and fresh water is readily available and kept topped up at all times.</li> <li>• Provide hand sanitiser where hand washing facilities are unavailable.</li> <li>• Regularly clean the hand washing facilities and check soap and sanitiser levels.</li> <li>• Sites will need extra supplies of soap, hand sanitiser and paper towels and these should be securely stored.</li> </ul> |
|--------------|--|

## 4.2 SITE TRANSPORTATION PROTOCOL

Employers are required to have an understanding of how workers will travel to and from site.

Workers travel to site		Workers are to travel to the site one person per vehicle where possible.
		Log is to be kept recording who has arrived on site, how they travelled and who they travelled with for contact tracing purposes.
		Workers must travel home in the same vehicle as they arrived in.
		Handwashing protocols to be observed before entering site.
Any travel managed by the employer should ensure that adequate steps can be achieved for this transport which includes:		Allowing for spaces between passengers.
		Hygienic washing of hands before and after the journey.
		Follow Vehicle Cleaning Procedures as per the Cleaning Protocols.
		Restricting equipment and baggage to trailers and or separate parts of the vehicle.
Deliveries to site		Deliveries to site should be delivered by one person only where possible.
		Handwashing protocols to be observed once arrived at site.
		Sign-in register must be completed for persons delivering goods to site.
		1,5 m physical distancing rules to be applied at all times.

### 4.3 CLEANING PROTOCOL

Construction Sites operating under Coronavirus COVID-19 Lockdown need to ensure they are protecting their workforce and minimising the risk of spread of infection.

---

#### Key Cleaning Tips

All construction sites (offices and jobsites included) should implement additional cleaning measures of common areas to help minimise the spread of COVID-19. Consider your work environment and what is frequently used and touched by workers, customers and others. The virus can be spread from person to person or by touching unclean equipment or surfaces. To stop the spread, focus efforts on cleaning areas where the virus is more likely to spread, such as the kitchen and toilet.

- Schedule regular cleaning.
- Use a suitable cleaning product.
- Use disposable cloths, if available.
- Always wear disposable gloves when cleaning. When finished, place used gloves in a rubbish bin.
- Wear disposable gloves while handling soiled items.
- Wash hands immediately after removing gloves or after handling these items.

Physical distancing should also be practiced when cleaning offices and jobsites. Refer to the **Physical Distancing and Hygiene Protocol** for more information.

---

#### Disinfecting Cleaning Aids

Cleaning aids, such as cloths or mops, must be germ-free or they'll spread germs to other surfaces. To help prevent the spread of germs:

- Use disposable cloths or paper towels when possible.
- Reusable cloths should be disinfected or washed after each use.
- Wash brushes in a dishwasher regularly or clean with detergent and warm water after each use.
- Use two buckets for mopping - one for detergent and the other for rinsing.
- Mops and buckets should be cleaned and dried after each use.

---

#### Site Cleaning

Before leaving the jobsite at the end of the working day or end of each shift, wipe down any tables/surfaces with soapy water or cleaning agents where possible. All workers must be checked out of site and record kept daily.

Common touch points may include:

- All waste and disposable PPE must be securely disposed of.
  - All door handles, railings and personal workstation areas are wiped down with a disinfectant, such as disinfectant wipes. Individuals are responsible for cleaning their workstation area with disinfectant wipes.
  - Clean all 'high-touch' surfaces such as desks, counters, tabletops, doorknobs, bathroom fixtures, toilets, light switches, phones, and keyboards every day with antiseptic wipes or disinfectant, including bleach solutions.
-

---

Cleaning Bathrooms, Toilets and Showers	<p>Clean toilets with a separate set of cleaning equipment (disposable cleaning cloths, mops, etc).</p> <p>Clean sinks frequently if they're used regularly. If your jobsite has a shower:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Clean shower trays frequently, if used regularly.</li><li>• If a shower has not been used for a while, let it run with hot water before using it.</li><li>• Keep tiles and grout in good condition.</li><li>• Clean shower curtains frequently. Common toilet touch points may include:</li><li>• Keep the U-bend and toilet bowl clean by flushing after each use.</li><li>• Limescale should be regularly removed using a descaling product.</li><li>• Keep the toilet seat, handle and rim clean by using a disinfectant.</li></ul>
Cleaning Tools and Equipment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Clean tools and equipment before and after each day's work with a disinfectant, concentrating on points of contact such as handles.</li><li>• Wash your hands after handling tools and equipment to prevent the spread of germs.</li><li>• If possible, don't share tools on-site. If sharing cannot be prevented, take precautions and follow the hand washing guide before and after each use.</li></ul>
Cleaning Vehicles	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Have dedicated drivers when using vehicles to avoid the spread of germs.</li><li>• Don't share vehicles if possible, if you need to use a shared vehicle then wipe down the common touched areas of the vehicle after each use (steering wheel, handbrake, gear stick, dashboard, handles, etc) and wash hands before and after using the vehicle.</li><li>• Wipe down the inside and common touched areas of the vehicle before and after each day.</li><li>• Have one person per vehicle where possible. If you are required to have more than one person then keep as much distance between people as possible, open the windows to keep air circulating and passengers to face towards the window to reduce the spread of germs.</li><li>• If you need to have multiple people in a vehicle, then where possible, split teams into groups and stay in those groups when you travel together.</li></ul>
Cleaning PPE	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Work clothes to be placed in washing machines and clean reusable PPE.</li><li>• Read and follow directions on the labels of laundry or clothing and detergent. In general, wash and dry laundry and clothing with the warmest temperatures recommended on the label.</li><li>• When handling soiled laundry wash your hands afterwards. All clothes and towels should be washed with a laundry product to prevent germs from spreading.</li><li>• Don't leave laundry in the washing machine – any remaining germs can multiply rapidly.</li></ul>
Specialist Clean	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If a worker is unwell and removed from site, a specialist clean will be completed in the area/ areas identified where the worker was working and has accessed. These areas are to be isolated until a specialist clean has taken place.</li><li>• All equipment and vehicles used must be cleaned down and disinfected, concentrating on points of contact such as handles, steering wheels etc.</li></ul>

---

#### 4.4 SCREENING AND MONITORING PROTOCOL

Construction Sites operating under Coronavirus COVID-19 Lockdown need to ensure they are protecting their workforce and minimising the risk of spread of infection. Screening is a method to assess the possibility of employees and visitors who may have symptoms or have been infected with COVID-19. Rigid screening of employees must take place every day before they enter the workplace. This will be the most effective way to control the spread of the virus within the workplace.

Employees should be screened for COVID-19 related symptoms and report such symptoms to a designated person and / or occupational health practitioner prior to entry into the workplace or work area in order for a decision to be made as to the staff member's continued attendance at work.

During Screening	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• At the start of a workday/shift and prior to ending the workday/shift, designated persons and / or occupational health practitioner must check with employees whether they have experienced sudden onset of any of the following symptoms: cough, shortness of breath or fever/chills (or <math>\geq 38^{\circ}\text{C}</math> measured temperature if this is available at the worksite), in the past 24 hours as outlined in <b>Daily Symptom Monitoring Tool</b>.</li><li>• If an employee reports any of the above-mentioned symptoms, they should immediately be provided with a FFP1 surgical mask and referred to the designated staff at the workplace so that arrangements can be made for COVID-19 testing at the closest testing centre.</li><li>• If employee report any additional symptoms as outlined in the symptom monitoring sheet, s/he should be provided with a surgical mask and referred to the occupational health clinic, family practitioner or primary care clinic for further clinical evaluation and requirement for COVID-19 testing if indicated.</li><li>• On receiving their results, the employee and/or health professional supporting the employee should notify their workplace so that the employee is managed accordingly. The workplace should proactively take steps to obtain this information to avoid any delays in reporting.</li></ul>
After isolation or quarantine period	<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Undergo medical evaluation to confirm that they are fit to work</li><li>• Wearing of surgical masks at all times while at work for a period of 21 days from the initial test</li><li>• Implement social distancing measures as appropriate (in the case of health workers avoiding contact with severely immunocompromised patients)</li><li>• Adherence to hand hygiene, respiratory hygiene, and cough etiquette</li><li>• Continued self-monitoring for symptoms, and seek medical re-evaluation if respiratory symptoms recur or worsen</li></ul>

**“Appendix C: COVID-19 Daily Symptom Monitoring Tool”** is a monitoring Tool to track construction workers on a daily basis for two weeks.

## **ACRONYMS**

PPE	Personal Protective Equipment
WHO	World Health Organization
NICD	National Institute of Communicable Diseases
RR	Residual Risk
OHSA	Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act No. 85 of 1993)

## **KEY TERMS & DEFINITIONS**

Contractor	Is defined as a person or company that arranges to supply materials or workers for building or for moving goods.
Extremely Vulnerable Persons	Defined as someone who is solid organ transplant recipients; people with specific cancers: people with cancer who are undergoing active chemotherapy or radical radiotherapy for lung cancer; people with cancers of the blood or bone marrow such as leukaemia, lymphoma or myeloma who are at any stage of treatment; people having immunotherapy or other continuing antibody treatments for cancer; people having other targeted cancer treatments which can affect the immune system, such as protein kinase inhibitors or PARP inhibitors; people who have had bone marrow or stem cell transplants in the last 6 months, or who are still taking immunosuppressive drugs; People with severe respiratory conditions including all cystic fibrosis, severe asthma and severe COPD; People with rare diseases and inborn errors of metabolism that significantly increase the risk of infections (such as SCID, homozygous sickle cell); People on immunosuppression therapies sufficient to significantly increase risk of infection; Women who are pregnant with significant heart disease, congenital or acquired.)
Physical Distancing	Physical distancing, also known as “social distancing”, is about keeping a safe distance from others.
Safe Work Practices	Safe work practices are types of administrative controls that include procedures for safe and proper work used to reduce the duration, frequency, or intensity of exposure to a hazard.
Screening	Screening is a way for health workers to find out if you may have COVID-19 or not. The health worker will ask you questions and scan your forehead to take your temperature.
Workplace	Workplace means any premises or place where a person performs work.

## APPENDIX A: SAFE PRACTICES ON SITE

### Using Face Masks on Site



#### Wash Hands First

Always make sure you wash your hands thoroughly before and after touching a mask.



#### Masks

There are many kinds of masks, depending on the task.



#### The Right Side

There is a metal clip at the top of the mask.



#### Placement

Place the metal clip across the top of your nose.



#### Attach the Mask

Attach the mask by pulling the elastic bands over your ears.



#### Stretch Down

Stretch the mask down, so that it covers your chin.



#### Adjust

Bend the metal clip around your nose so that it sits securely.



#### Taking off the Mask

Pull the elastic bands away from your ears.



#### Disposal

Always place the used mask in a closed rubbish bin for secure disposal.

### Using Face Masks on Site



#### Any time you are completing a manual task

Use your usual work safety gloves



#### If you are cleaning any surfaces

Use disposable gloves for this and throw them in the bin when you finish cleaning



#### Avoid touching your face while wearing gloves



#### Remove your gloves and then wash your hands prior to eating, drinking or smoking/vaping



#### Practice good hand hygiene and good cough and sneeze etiquette while wearing gloves

## APPENDIX B: SUSPECTED OR CONFIRMED CASE OF COVID-19

If the suspected or confirmed case of COVID-19 is at work



### Isolate

Isolate the person from others and provide a disposable surgical mask, if available, for the person to wear.



### Inform

Call (Insert No). Follow the advice of health officials.



### Transport

Ensure the person has transport to their home or to a medical facility



### Clean

Clean the area where the person was working and all places they have been. This may mean evacuating those areas. Use PPE when cleaning. Identify who at the workplace had close contact with the infected person in the 24 hours before that infected person started showing symptoms. Send those people home to isolate. Allow employees to raise concerns.



### Identify



### Clean

Clean the area where the person was working and all places they have been. This may mean evacuating those areas. Use PPE when cleaning. Review risk management controls relating to COVID-19 and review whether work may need to change. Keep employees up to date on what is happening.



### Review

If the suspected or confirmed case of COVID-19 is not at work when diagnosed



### Inform

Call (Insert No). Follow the advice of health officials.



### Identify

Identify who at the workplace had close contact with the infected person in the 24 hours before that infected person started showing symptoms. Send those people home to isolate. Allow employees to raise concerns.



### Clean

Clean the area where the person was working and all places they have been. This may mean evacuating those areas. Use PPE when cleaning.



### Review

Review risk management controls relating to COVID-19 and review whether work may need to change. Keep employees up to date on what is happening.

## APPENDIX C: COVID-19 DAILY SYMPTOM MONITORING TOOL



### COVID-19 DAILY SYMPTOM MONITORING TOOL

Details of Worker				Details of Person completing this form			Date completing form	
Identifier	Date of contact	DD/MM/YYYY	Place last contact	Surname	Name	DD/MM/YYYY		
Surname	Name			Role	Facility name			
Date of birth	DD/MM/YYYY	Age (Y)	Sex M <input type="checkbox"/> F <input type="checkbox"/>	Email address	Telephone number			
Healthcare worker	Y <input type="checkbox"/> N <input type="checkbox"/> If yes, facility name			Next of kin details				
Contact number(s)	Email			Next of Kin name and surname	Next of Kin contact number			
Physical address								
House number	Street		Suburb	Town				
District	Province		Patient traced	Y <input type="checkbox"/> N <input type="checkbox"/>				
Details of confirmed COVID-19 case (Complete only if Applicable)								
Contact type <sup>1</sup>	Close <input type="checkbox"/>	Casual <input type="checkbox"/>	Relationship	Name	Surname	Date of Birth DD/MM/YYYY		

**Instructions for completion:** Mark "Y" if symptom present and "N" if not. If any symptoms are present collect, contact (Insert No) immediately and make immediate arrangements for the collection of a combined nasopharyngeal and oropharyngeal swab. Refer to COVID-19 Quick Guide on the NICD website for additional details. Days post exposure to case.

DAY	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
Date (DD/MM)														
Measured body temp														
Chills	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N
Cough	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N
Sore throat	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N
Shortness of breath	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N
Myalgia/body pains	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N
Diarrhoea <sup>3</sup>	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N	<input type="checkbox"/> Y <input type="checkbox"/> N

<sup>1</sup> Close contact: A person having had face-to-face contact (≤2 metres) or was in a closed environment with a COVID-19 case; this includes, amongst others, all persons living in the same household as a COVID-19 case and, people working closely in the same environment as a case. A healthcare worker or other person providing direct care for a COVID-19 case, while not wearing recommended personal protective equipment or PPE (e.g., gowns, gloves, NIOSH-certified disposable N95 respirator, eye protection). A contact in an aircraft sitting within two seats (in any direction) of the COVID-19 case, travel companions or persons providing care, and crew members serving in the section of the aircraft where the index case was seated. Casual contact: Anyone not meeting the definition for a close contact but with possible exposure. <sup>2</sup> Chose from: Spouse, Aunt, Child, Class mate, Colleague, Cousin, Father, Friend, Grandfather, Grandmother, Healthcare worker taking care of, Mother, Nephew, Niece, Other relative, Uncle. <sup>3</sup> Diarrhoea defined as three or more loose stools in a 24-hour period.



## APPENDIX D: COVID-19 BASELINE RISK ASSESSMENT

					Likelihood						
					Very Unlikely	Unlikely	Possible	Likely	Very Likely		
					Severity	Negligible	1	2	3	4	5
						Minor	2	4	6	8	10
						Moderate	3	6	9	12	15
						Major	4	8	12	16	20
						Extreme	5	10	15	20	25
Hazard	L	S	Risk	Control Measures	L	S	RR	Persons at Risk			
Exposure from others due to: 1. Living with someone with a confirmed case of COVID-19. 2. Have come into close contact (within 2 metres for 15 minutes or more) with a confirmed case of COVID-19. 3. Being advised by a public health authority that contact with a diagnosed case has occurred.				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>To follow government action of self-isolation and only to leave house on the following circumstances: for medical reason; to shop for necessary food supplies; for exercise once per day; and for essential works including those deemed 'key workers'</li> <li>Any existing individual risk assessments (disability, young persons or new / expectant mothers) to be reviewed</li> <li>Maintain contact with line management and Human Resources (HR) and to follow company policy / guidance.</li> <li>Travel is only required for essential travel; reduce the amount of time using public transport and to implement social distancing where possible (2m clearance from persons and not to travel in groups of more than 2 unless it is immediate family)</li> <li>To continue following ongoing government guidance</li> <li>Stay at home and only attend hospital in an emergency. Do not attend GP surgery and phone (Insert No) if further advice is required</li> <li>Company to ensure extremely vulnerable persons are shielding themselves and following their specific medical advice issued to them no later than 29/3/2020</li> <li>Always follow good hygiene measures</li> <li>Avoid all visitors to your home unless they are providing a medical requirement</li> <li>Do not approach delivery staff, allow packages to be left on the doorstep</li> <li>Do not take any antibiotics as they do not work against viruses.</li> </ul>				Individual Workers			
Suspected case whilst working on site				If a worker develops a high temperature or a persistent cough while at work, they should: 1. Return home immediately				Individual workers			

					Likelihood						
					Very Unlikely	Unlikely	Possible	Likely	Very Likely		
					<b>Severity</b>	Negligible	1	2	3	4	5
						Minor	2	4	6	8	10
						Moderate	3	6	9	12	15
						Major	4	8	12	16	20
						Extreme	5	10	15	20	25
Hazard	L	S	Risk	Control Measures	L	S	RR	Persons at Risk			
				<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. Avoid touching anything</li> <li>3. Cough or sneeze into a tissue and put it in a bin, or if they do not have tissues, cough and sneeze into the crook of their elbow.</li> <li>4. They must then follow the guidance on self-isolation and not return to work until their period of self-isolation has been completed.</li> </ol>							
General travel including foreign travel				<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Do not travel unless you cannot work from home or deemed a key worker – implement teleconferencing for meetings</li> <li>2. Where an individual has recently visited these countries, they should self / home isolate themselves until further notice from the government (lockdown measures continue to apply)</li> <li>3. Please continue to follow any further national government advice provided</li> <li>4. Where an occupational health (OH) service provider has been appointed, please seek additional advice or concerns through this service</li> <li>5. All persons to limit their use of public transport. Where travel is essential, please use private single occupancy where possible</li> </ol>				Individual workers			
Access / egress to site				<p>Where possible, please consider and implement the following practices:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Stop all non-essential visitors</li> <li>2. Introduce staggered start and finish times to reduce congestion and contact at all times</li> <li>3. Monitor site access points to enable social distancing – you may need to change the number of access points, either increase to reduce congestion or decrease to enable monitoring</li> <li>4. Remove or disable entry systems that require skin contact e.g. fingerprint scanners</li> <li>5. Require all workers to wash or clean their hands before entering or leaving the site</li> <li>6. Allow plenty of space (two metres) between people waiting to enter site</li> </ol>				Individual workers			

					Likelihood						
					Very Unlikely	Unlikely	Possible	Likely	Very Likely		
					Severity	Negligible	1	2	3	4	5
						Minor	2	4	6	8	10
						Moderate	3	6	9	12	15
						Major	4	8	12	16	20
						Extreme	5	10	15	20	25
Hazard	L	S	Risk	Control Measures	L	S	RR	Persons at Risk			
				<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Regularly clean common contact surfaces in reception, office, access control and delivery areas e.g. scanners, turnstiles, screens, telephone handsets, desks, particularly during peak flow times</li> <li>Reduce the number of people in attendance at site inductions and consider holding them outdoors wherever possible</li> <li>Drivers should remain in their vehicles if the load will allow it and must wash or clean their hands before unloading goods and materials.</li> </ol>							
Inclement weather – cold temperature allows disease to survive				<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>All persons to dress appropriately for the weather</li> <li>Welfare facilities provided to shelter from the elements</li> <li>Maintain good hygiene measures at all times</li> <li>Appropriate respiratory protective equipment (RPE) masks to be considered as last resort however face fit test (FFT) must be completed to ensure mask effectiveness. It is advised to speak to your H&amp;S competent person on these matters and supplies should be reserved for medical staff as it has been documented that supplies have been difficult to procure</li> </ol>				Individual workers			
Poor hygiene				<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Wash your hands thoroughly and regularly. Use soap and water for at least 20 seconds. Use alcohol-based hand sanitiser if soap and water is not available and hand washing technique to be adopted as directed</li> <li>Avoid touching your face/eyes/nose/mouth with unwashed hands and cover your cough or sneeze with a tissue then throw it in the bin.</li> <li>Provide additional hand washing facilities to the usual welfare facilities if a large spread out site or significant numbers of personnel on site</li> <li>Regularly clean the hand washing facilities and check soap and sanitiser levels</li> <li>Provide suitable and sufficient rubbish bins for hand towels with regular removal and disposal.</li> <li>Sites will need extra supplies of soap, hand sanitiser and paper towels and these should be securely stored.</li> </ol>				Individual workers			

					Likelihood						
					Very Unlikely	Unlikely	Possible	Likely	Very Likely		
					Severity	Negligible	1	2	3	4	5
						Minor	2	4	6	8	10
						Moderate	3	6	9	12	15
						Major	4	8	12	16	20
						Extreme	5	10	15	20	25
Hazard	L	S	Risk	Control Measures	L	S	RR	Persons at Risk			
				7. Restrict the number of people using toilet facilities at any one time e.g. use a welfare attendant. Wash hands before and after using the facilities. Enhance the cleaning regimes for toilet facilities particularly door handles, locks and the toilet flush. Portable toilets should be avoided wherever possible, but where in use these should be cleaned and emptied more frequently.							
Canteen - exposure from large numbers of persons				<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The workforce should also be required to stay on site once they have entered it and not use local shops.</li> <li>Dedicated eating areas should be identified on site to reduce food waste and contamination</li> <li>Break times should be staggered to reduce congestion and contact at all times</li> <li>Hand cleaning facilities or hand sanitiser should be available at the entrance of any room where people eat and should be used by workers when entering and leaving the area</li> <li>The workforce should be asked to bring pre-prepared meals and refillable drinking bottles from home</li> <li>Workers should sit 2 metres apart from each other whilst eating and avoid all contact</li> <li>Where catering is provided on site, it should provide pre-prepared and wrapped food only - Payments should be taken by contactless card wherever possible and Crockery, eating utensils, cups etc. should not be used</li> <li>Drinking water should be provided with enhanced cleaning measures of the tap mechanism introduced</li> <li>Tables should be cleaned between each use</li> <li>All rubbish should be put straight in the bin and not left for someone else to clear up</li> <li>All areas used for eating must be thoroughly cleaned at the end of each break and shift, including chairs, door handles, vending machines and payment devices.</li> </ol>				Individual Workers			

					Likelihood						
					Very Unlikely	Unlikely	Possible	Likely	Very Likely		
					Severity	Negligible	1	2	3	4	5
						Minor	2	4	6	8	10
						Moderate	3	6	9	12	15
						Major	4	8	12	16	20
						Extreme	5	10	15	20	25
Hazard	L	S	Risk	Control Measures	L	S	RR	Persons at Risk			
Use of Changing facilities, showers and drying rooms				<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Introduce staggered start and finish times to reduce congestion and contact at all times</li> <li>2. Introduce enhanced cleaning of all facilities throughout the day and at the end of each day</li> <li>3. Consider increasing the number or size of facilities available on site if possible</li> <li>4. Based on the size of each facility, determine how many people can use it at any one time to maintain a distance of two metres</li> <li>5. Provide suitable and sufficient rubbish bins in these areas with regular removal and disposal.</li> </ol>				Individual workers			